



US007608597B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Sommadossi et al.(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,608,597 B2**(45) **Date of Patent:** **Oct. 27, 2009**(54) **METHODS AND COMPOSITIONS FOR
TREATING HEPATITIS C VIRUS**(75) Inventors: **Jean-Pierre Sommadossi**, Birmingham,
AL (US); **Paulo LaColla**, Cagliari (IL)(73) Assignees: **Idenix Pharmaceuticals, Inc.**,
Cambridge, MA (US); **Universita Degli
Studi Di Cagliari**, Cagliari (IT)(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this
patent is extended or adjusted under 35
U.S.C. 154(b) by 285 days.(21) Appl. No.: **10/602,691**(22) Filed: **Jun. 20, 2003**(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2004/0097461 A1 May 20, 2004

Related U.S. Application Data(63) Continuation of application No. 09/864,078, filed on
May 23, 2001, now Pat. No. 6,914,054.(60) Provisional application No. 60/206,585, filed on May
23, 2000.(51) **Int. Cl.**
A01N 43/04 (2006.01)
A61K 31/70 (2006.01)(52) **U.S. CL.** **514/42; 514/43; 514/44;**
514/45; 514/46; 514/47; 514/48; 514/49;
514/50; 514/51(58) **Field of Classification Search** 514/43;
536/26.23, 26.26, 26.7, 27.13, 27.2
See application file for complete search history.(56) **References Cited****U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

3,074,929 A 1/1963 Hitchings et al.
3,116,282 A 12/1963 Hunter
3,480,613 A 11/1969 Walton et al.
3,798,209 A 3/1974 Wilkowski et al.
3,891,623 A 6/1975 Vorbruggen et al.
4,022,889 A 5/1977 Bannister et al.
4,058,602 A 11/1977 Beisler et al.
RE29,835 E 11/1978 Witkowski et al.
4,209,613 A 6/1980 Vorbruggen
4,239,753 A 12/1980 Skulnick et al.
4,294,766 A 10/1981 Schmidt et al.
4,522,811 A 6/1985 Eppstein et al.
4,605,659 A 8/1986 Verheyden et al.
4,689,404 A 8/1987 Kawada et al.
4,754,026 A 6/1988 Kawada et al.
4,814,477 A 3/1989 Wijnberg et al.
4,880,784 A 11/1989 Robins et al.
4,952,740 A 8/1990 Juge et al.
4,957,924 A 9/1990 Beauchamp
5,034,394 A 7/1991 Daluge
5,122,517 A 6/1992 Vince et al.
5,149,794 A 9/1992 Yatvin et al.
5,157,027 A 10/1992 Biller et al.
5,194,654 A 3/1993 Hostetler et al.
5,200,514 A 4/1993 Chu

5,223,263 A 6/1993 Hostetler et al.
5,246,924 A 9/1993 Fox et al.
5,256,641 A 10/1993 Yatvin et al.
5,256,797 A 10/1993 Chou et al.
5,322,955 A 6/1994 Matsumoto et al.
5,371,210 A 12/1994 Chou et al.
5,372,808 A 12/1994 Blatt et al.
5,391,769 A 2/1995 Matsumoto et al.
5,401,861 A 3/1995 Chou et al.
5,411,947 A 5/1995 Hostetler et al.
5,463,092 A 10/1995 Hostetler et al.
5,539,116 A 7/1996 Liotta et al.
5,543,389 A 8/1996 Yatvin et al.
5,543,390 A 8/1996 Yatvin et al.
5,543,391 A 8/1996 Yatvin et al.
5,554,728 A 9/1996 Basava et al.
5,565,438 A 10/1996 Chu et al.
5,567,688 A 10/1996 Chu et al.
5,587,362 A 12/1996 Chu et al.
5,606,048 A 2/1997 Chou et al.
5,676,942 A 10/1997 Testa et al.
5,696,277 A 12/1997 Hostetler et al.
5,738,845 A 4/1998 Imakawa
5,744,600 A 4/1998 Mansuri et al.
5,750,676 A 5/1998 Vorbruggen et al.
5,763,418 A 6/1998 Marsuda et al.
5,780,617 A 7/1998 Van den Bosch et al.
5,789,608 A 8/1998 Glazier
5,821,357 A 10/1998 Chou et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

CA 2252144 4/2000

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Altmann et al., "The synthesis of 1'-methyl carbocyclic thymidine
and its effect on nucleic acid duplex stability," *Synlett, Thieme Verlag*,
Stuttgart, DE, 10:853-855 (1994).

(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Traviss C McIntosh, III
(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Jones Day

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A method and composition for treating a host infected with
hepatitis C comprising administering an effective hepatitis C
treatment amount of a described 1', 2' or 3'-modified nucleo-
side or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof,
is provided.

33 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
5,830,455 A	11/1998	Valtuna et al.	7,169,766 B2	1/2007	Sommadossi et al.
5,849,696 A	12/1998	Chretien et al.	7,202,224 B2	4/2007	Eldrup et al.
5,908,621 A	6/1999	Glue et al.	2002/0019363 A1	2/2002	Ismaili et al.
5,928,636 A	7/1999	Alber et al.	2002/0035085 A1	3/2002	Sommadossi et al.
5,942,223 A	8/1999	Bazer et al.	2002/0052345 A1	5/2002	Erion et al.
5,977,061 A	11/1999	De Clercq	2002/0055473 A1	5/2002	Ganguly et al.
5,977,325 A	11/1999	McCarthy et al.	2002/0055483 A1	5/2002	Watanabe et al.
5,980,884 A	11/1999	Blatt et al.	2002/0095033 A1	7/2002	Ramasamy et al.
6,002,029 A	12/1999	Hostetler et al.	2002/0099072 A1	7/2002	Bachand et al.
6,063,628 A	5/2000	Loeb et al.	2002/0127203 A1	9/2002	Albrecht
6,140,310 A	10/2000	Glazier	2002/0147160 A1	10/2002	Bhat et al.
6,153,594 A	11/2000	Borretzen et al.	2002/0156030 A1	10/2002	Ramasamy et al.
6,156,501 A	12/2000	McGall et al.	2002/0173490 A1	11/2002	Jiang et al.
6,172,046 B1	1/2001	Albrecht	2002/0198171 A1	12/2002	Schinazi et al.
6,248,878 B1	6/2001	Matulic-Adamic et al.	2003/0008841 A1	1/2003	Devos et al.
6,252,060 B1	6/2001	Hostetler	2003/0028013 A1	2/2003	Wang et al.
6,271,212 B1	8/2001	Chu et al.	2003/0039630 A1	2/2003	Albrecht
6,277,830 B1	8/2001	Ganguly et al.	2003/0050229 A1	3/2003	Sommadossi et al.
6,312,662 B1	11/2001	Erion et al.	2003/0053986 A1	3/2003	Zahm
6,340,690 B1	1/2002	Bachand et al.	2003/0055013 A1	3/2003	Brass
6,348,587 B1	2/2002	Schinazi et al.	2003/0060400 A1	3/2003	LaColla et al.
6,369,040 B1	4/2002	Acevedo et al.	2003/0083306 A1	5/2003	Imbach et al.
6,395,716 B1	5/2002	Gosselin et al.	2003/0083307 A1	5/2003	Devos et al.
6,436,437 B1	8/2002	Yatvin et al.	2003/0087873 A1	5/2003	Stuyver et al.
6,444,652 B1	9/2002	Gosselin et al.	2003/0124512 A1	7/2003	Stuyver
6,448,392 B1	9/2002	Hostetler et al.	2003/0220290 A1	11/2003	Gosselin et al.
6,455,508 B1	9/2002	Ramasamy et al.	2003/0225028 A1	12/2003	Gosselin et al.
6,458,772 B1	10/2002	Zhou et al.	2003/0225029 A1	12/2003	Stuyver
6,458,773 B1	10/2002	Gosselin et al.	2003/0225037 A1	12/2003	Storer et al.
6,472,373 B1	10/2002	Albrecht	2003/0236216 A1	12/2003	Devos et al.
6,495,677 B1	12/2002	Ramasamy et al.	2004/0002476 A1	1/2004	Stuyver et al.
6,566,344 B1	5/2003	Gosselin et al.	2004/0002596 A1	1/2004	Hong et al.
6,566,365 B1	5/2003	Storer	2004/0006002 A1	1/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,569,837 B1	5/2003	Gosselin et al.	2004/0023921 A1	2/2004	Yao et al.
6,573,248 B2	6/2003	Ramasamy et al.	2004/0059104 A1	3/2004	Cook et al.
6,596,700 B2	7/2003	Sommadossi et al.	2004/0063622 A1	4/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,599,887 B2	7/2003	Hostetler et al.	2004/0063658 A1	4/2004	Roberts et al.
6,605,614 B2	8/2003	Bachand et al.	2004/0067901 A1	4/2004	Bhat et al.
6,642,206 B2	11/2003	Ramasamy et al.	2004/0072788 A1	4/2004	Bhat et al.
6,660,721 B2	12/2003	Devos et al.	2004/0077587 A1	4/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,752,981 B1	6/2004	Erion et al.	2004/0097461 A1	5/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,777,395 B2*	8/2004	Bhat et al. 514/43	2004/0097462 A1	5/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,784,161 B2	8/2004	Ismaili et al.	2004/0101535 A1	5/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,784,166 B2	8/2004	Devos et al.	2004/0102414 A1	5/2004	Sommadossi et al.
6,787,526 B1	9/2004	Bryant et al.	2004/0110717 A1	6/2004	Bhat et al.
6,812,219 B2	11/2004	LaColla et al.	2004/0110718 A1	6/2004	Devos et al.
6,815,542 B2	11/2004	Hong et al.	2004/0121980 A1	6/2004	Martin et al.
6,831,069 B2	12/2004	Tam et al.	2004/0147464 A1	7/2004	Roberts et al.
6,833,361 B2	12/2004	Hong et al.	2004/0229839 A1	11/2004	Babu et al.
6,846,810 B2	1/2005	Martin et al.	2004/0248844 A1	12/2004	Ismaili et al.
6,875,751 B2	4/2005	Imbach et al.	2004/0259934 A1	12/2004	Olsen et al.
6,908,924 B2	6/2005	Watanabe et al.	2004/0266722 A1	12/2004	Devos et al.
6,911,424 B2	6/2005	Schinazi et al.	2004/0266723 A1	12/2004	Otto et al.
6,914,054 B2	7/2005	Sommadossi et al.	2004/0266996 A1	12/2004	Rabi
6,927,291 B2	8/2005	Jin et al.	2005/0009737 A1	1/2005	Clark et al.
6,946,115 B2	9/2005	Erion et al.	2005/0020825 A1	1/2005	Storer et al.
6,946,450 B2	9/2005	Gosselin et al.	2005/0031588 A1	2/2005	Sommadossi et al.
6,949,522 B2	9/2005	Otto et al.	2005/0038240 A1	2/2005	Connolly et al.
6,965,033 B2	11/2005	Jiang et al.	2005/0090463 A1	4/2005	Roberts et al.
7,056,895 B2	6/2006	Ramasamy et al.	2005/0101550 A1	5/2005	Roberts et al.
7,094,770 B2	8/2006	Watanabe et al.	2005/0107312 A1	5/2005	Keicher et al.
7,101,861 B2	9/2006	Sommadossi et al.	2005/0113330 A1	5/2005	Imbach et al.
7,105,493 B2	9/2006	Sommadossi et al.	2005/0119200 A1	6/2005	Roberts et al.
7,105,499 B2	9/2006	Carroll et al.	2005/0124532 A1	6/2005	Sommadossi et al.
7,125,855 B2	10/2006	Bhat et al.	2005/0137141 A1	6/2005	Hilfinger et al.
7,144,868 B2	12/2006	Roberts et al.	2005/0137161 A1	6/2005	Sommadossi et al.
7,148,206 B2	12/2006	Sommadossi et al.	2005/0215511 A1	9/2005	Roberts et al.
7,151,089 B2	12/2006	Roberts et al.	2006/0040890 A1	2/2006	Martin et al.
7,157,434 B2	1/2007	Keicher et al.	2006/0111311 A1	5/2006	Keicher et al.
7,157,441 B2	1/2007	Sommadossi et al.	2006/0166865 A1	7/2006	Sommadossi et al.
7,163,929 B2	1/2007	Sommadossi et al.	2006/0194835 A1	8/2006	Dugourd et al.
			2006/0199783 A1	9/2006	Wang et al.
			2006/0241064 A1	10/2006	Roberts et al.

US 7,608,597 B2

Page 3

2007/0015905 A1 1/2007 LaColla et al.
2007/0060503 A1 3/2007 Gosselin et al.
2007/0060504 A1 3/2007 Gosselin et al.
2007/0203334 A1 8/2007 Mayes et al.

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE 1919307 1/1971
DE 2122991 11/1972
DE 2508312 9/1976
DE 140254 2/1980
DE 3512781 10/1985
DE 42 24 737 2/1994
DE 102005012681 9/2006
EP 0288847 4/1988
EP 0 180 276 12/1988
EP 0 352 248 1/1990
EP 0494119 1/1992
EP 0 526 655 2/1993
EP 0 553 358 8/1993
EP 0 587 364 3/1994
EP 0 742 287 11/1996
EP 0 747 389 12/1996
EP 0350287 9/2000
EP 0650371 11/2000
FR 1521076 4/1968
FR 1581628 9/1969
FR 2662165 11/1991
GB 924246 4/1963
GB 984877 3/1965
GB 1187824 5/1966
GB 1163102 9/1969
GB 1163103 A 9/1969
GB 1209654 A 10/1970
GB 1542442 3/1979
JP 71021872 3/1968
JP 48048495 9/1971
JP 61212592 9/1986
JP 61263995 11/1986
JP 61263996 11/1986
JP 63215694 9/1988
JP 2091022 3/1990
JP 06135988 5/1994
JP 06211890 8/1994
JP 06228186 8/1994
JP 06293645 10/1994
JP 09059292 3/1997
WO WO 89/02733 4/1989
WO WO 90/00555 1/1990
WO WO 91/16920 11/1991
WO WO 91/18914 12/1991
WO WO 91/19721 12/1991
WO WO 92/15308 9/1992
WO WO 92/18517 10/1992
WO WO 93/00910 1/1993
WO WO 94/01117 1/1994
WO WO 94/26273 11/1994
WO WO 96/15132 5/1996
WO WO 98/16184 A2 4/1998
WO WO 99/43691 A1 2/1999
WO WO 99/15194 4/1999
WO WO 99/23104 5/1999
WO WO 99/45016 9/1999
WO WO 99/52514 10/1999
WO WO 99/59621 11/1999
WO WO 99/64016 12/1999
WO WO 00/09531 A2 2/2000
WO WO 00/25799 5/2000
WO WO 00/37110 6/2000
WO WO 00/52015 9/2000
WO WO 01/18013 3/2001
WO WO 01/32153 5/2001
WO WO 01/32153 A2 5/2001

WO WO 01/91737 A2 6/2001
WO WO 01/92282 A2 6/2001
WO WO 01/47935 7/2001
WO WO 01/49700 7/2001
WO WO 01/60315 A2 8/2001
WO WO 01/68663 A1 9/2001
WO WO 01/79246 A2 10/2001
WO WO 01/81359 11/2001
WO WO 01/90121 A2 11/2001
WO WO 01/96353 A2 12/2001
WO WO 02/03997 A1 1/2002
WO WO 02/18404 A2 3/2002
WO WO 02/32414 4/2002
WO WO 02/32920 A2 4/2002
WO WO 02/48165 A2 6/2002
WO WO 02/057287 A2 7/2002
WO WO 02/057425 A2 7/2002
WO WO 02/070533 A2 9/2002
WO WO 02/094289 A1 11/2002
WO WO 02/100415 A2 12/2002
WO WO 03/024461 3/2003
WO WO 03/026589 A2 4/2003
WO WO 03/026675 A1 4/2003
WO WO 03/039523 5/2003
WO WO 03/051899 A1 6/2003
WO WO 03/081899 6/2003
WO WO 03/061385 A1 7/2003
WO WO 03/061576 A2 7/2003
WO WO 03/062255 A2 7/2003
WO WO 03/062256 A1 7/2003
WO WO 03/062257 A1 7/2003
WO WO 03/063771 A2 8/2003
WO WO 03/068162 A2 8/2003
WO WO 03/068164 A2 8/2003
WO WO 03/068244 8/2003
WO WO 03/072757 A2 9/2003
WO WO 03/093290 A2 11/2003
WO WO 03/099840 12/2003
WO WO 03/100017 12/2003
WO WO 03/105770 12/2003
WO WO 03/106577 12/2003
WO WO 04/000858 A2 12/2003
WO WO 2004/002422 A2 1/2004
WO WO 2004/002999 A2 1/2004
WO WO 2004/003000 1/2004
WO WO 2004/003138 1/2004
WO WO 2004/003138 A2 1/2004
WO WO 2004/007512 A2 1/2004
WO WO 2004/009020 A2 1/2004
WO WO 2004/023921 3/2004
WO WO 2004/028481 A2 4/2004
WO WO 2004/041203 5/2004
WO WO 2004/043977 5/2004
WO WO 2004/043978 5/2004
WO WO 2004/044132 5/2004
WO WO 2004/046159 A1 6/2004
WO WO 2004/046331 6/2004
WO WO 2004/052899 6/2004
WO WO 2004/058792 7/2004
WO WO 2004/065398 8/2004
WO WO 2004/072090 8/2004
WO WO 2004/080466 9/2004
WO WO 2004/084796 10/2004
WO WO 2004/096149 11/2004
WO WO 2004/106356 12/2004
WO WO 2005/003147 1/2005
WO WO 2005/012327 2/2005
WO WO 2005/020884 3/2005
WO WO 2005/020885 3/2005
WO WO 2005/021568 3/2005
WO WO 2005/030258 4/2005
WO WO 2005/042556 5/2005
WO WO 2005/123087 12/2005

- Oral Session V, Hepatitis C Virus, Flaviviridae; 16th International Conference on Antiviral Research (Apr. 27, 2003, Savannah, GA.) p. A75-77.
- Pan-Zhou, X-R, et al., "Differential effects of antiretroviral nucleoside analogs on mitochondrial function in HepG2 cells," *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.*, 44:496-503 (2000).
- Rosenthal, A., et al., Branched-chain sugar nucleosides. Synthesis of 3'-C-ethyl (and 3'-C-butyl)uridine *Carbohydrate Research*, 79:235-242 (1980).
- Samano, V., et al., "Synthesis and radical-induced ring-opening reactions of 2'-deoxyadenosine-2'-spirocyclopropane and its uridine analogue. Mechanistic probe for ribonucleotide reductases," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 114:4007-4008 (1992).
- Samano, V., et al., "Nucleic acid related compounds. 77. 2',3'-Didehydro-2',3'-dideoxy-2'(and 3')-methyl nucleosides via [3,3]-sigmatropic rearrangements of 2'(and 3')-methylene-3'(and 2')-O-thiocarbonyl derivatives and radical reduction of a 2'-chloro-3'-methylene analogue," *Can. J. Chem.*, 71:186-191 (1993).
- Schmit, C., et al., "The effects of 2'- and 3'-alkyl substituents on oligonucleotide hybridization and stability," *Biorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 4(16):1969-1974 (1994). ["Altmann"].
- Serafinowski, P.J., et al., "New method for the preparation of some 2'- and 3'-trifluoromethyl-2',3'-dideoxyuridine derivatives," *Tetrahedron* (Elsevier Science Publishers), 56(2):333-339 (1999).
- Sharma, P.K., et al., "Synthesis of 3'-trifluoromethyl nucleosides as potential antiviral agents," *Nucleosides, Nucleotides and Nucleic Acids*, 19(4):757-774 (2000).
- Sommadossi J-P, et al., "Comparison of cytotoxicity of the (-) and (+)-enantiomer of 2',3'-dideoxy-3'-thiacytidine in normal human bone marrow progenitor cells," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 44:1921-1925 (1992).
- Sommadossi J-P, et al., "Toxicity of 3'-azido-3'-deoxythymidine and 9-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxymethyl)guanine for normal human hematopoietic progenitor cells in vitro" *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, 31:452-454 (1987).
- Tritsch, D., et al., "3'- β -ethynyl and 2'-deoxy-3'- β -ethynyl adenosines: First 3'- β -branched adenosines substrates of adenosine deaminase," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 10:139-141 (2000).
- Tunitskaya, V.L., et al., "Substrate properties of C'-methyl UTP derivatives in T7 RNA polymerase reactions. Evidence for N-type NTP conformation," *FEBS Letters*, 400:263-266 (1997).
- Usui, H., et al., "Synthesis of 2'-deoxy-8,2'-ethanoadenosine and 3'-deoxy-8,3'-ethanoadenosine (Nucleosides and Nucleotides, LXIV)," *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, 34(1):15-23 (1986).
- Walczak, K., et al., "Synthesis of 1-(3-alkyl-2,3-dideoxy-D-pentofuranosyl)uracils with potential anti-HIV activity," *Acta Chemica Scand.*, 45:930-934 (1991).
- Walton, E., et al., "Branched-chain sugar nucleosides. V. Synthesis and antiviral properties of several branched-chain sugar nucleotides," *J. Med. Chem.*, 12:306-309 (1969).
- Wolfe, M.S., et al., "A concise synthesis of 2'-C-methylribonucleosides," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 36(42):7611-7614 (1995).
- Wu, J.-C., et al., A new stereospecific synthesis of [3.1.0] bicyclic cyclopropano analog of 2',3'-dideoxyuridine, *Tetrahedron*, 46(7):2587-2592 (1990).
- U.S. Appl. No. 10/845,976, filed May 14, 2004, Storer et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,443, filed Dec. 6, 2004, Gosselin et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 11/516,928, filed Sep. 6, 2006, Sommadossi et al.
- Alt, et al., "Core Specific Antisense Phosphorothioate Oligodeoxynucleotides as Prent and Specific Inhibitors of Hepatitis C Viral Translation," *Arch. Virol.* (1997) 142: 589-599.
- Alt, et al., "Specific inhibition of hepatitis C viral gene expression by antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides," *Hepatology*, 22:707-717 (1995).
- Awano, et al., "Nucleosides and Nucleotides, Part 144 Synthesis and Antiviral Activity of 5-Substituted (2's)-2'-Deoxy-2'-C-Methylcytidines and -Uridines," *Archiv Der Pharmazie, VCH Verlagsgesellschaft MbH, Weinheim, DE*, vol. 329, Feb. 1, 1996, pp. 66-72.
- Battaglia, et al., "Combination Therapy with Interferon and Ribavirin in the Treatment of Chronic Hepatitis C Infection," *Ann. Pharmacother.*, 34: 487-494 (2000).
- Beigelman, et al., Functionally complete analogs of nucleosides. The use of D-glucose for the synthesis of 2-C-methyl-D-ribose derivatives and related nucleosides. *Biorganicheskaya Khimiya*, 1986, vol. 12(10), pp. 1359-1365.
- Berenguer, et al., "Hepatitis C Virus in the Transplant Setting," *Antivir. Ther.*, 3 (Suppl. 3): 125-136 (1998).
- Berman, E., et al., "Synergistic Cytotoxic Effect of Azidothymidine and Recombinant Interferon Alpha on Normal Human Bone Marrow Progenitor Cells," *Blood*, 74(4):1281-1286 (1989).
- Bhat, et al., (Oral Session V. Hepatitis C Virus, Flaviviridae, 2003 (Oral Session V. Hepatitis C Virus Flaviviridae) 16th International Conference On Antiviral Research (Apr. 27, 2003, Savannah, Ga.) p. A75).
- Bhopale, Girish Mahadeorao, et al., "Emerging drugs for chronic hepatitis C," *Hepatology Research* (2005), 32(3), 146-153.
- Bianco, et al., "Synthesis of a New Carbocyclic Nucleoside Analog," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 38(36): 6433-6436.
- Billich, et al., "Nucleoside Phosphotransferase from Malt Sprouts," *Biol. Chem. Hoppe-Seyler*, vol. 367, pp. 267-278, Apr. 1986.
- Bio, et al., "Practical Synthesis of a Potent Hepatitis C Virus RNA Replication Inhibitor," *Journal of Organic Chemistry* (2004), 69(19), 6257-6266.
- Bloch, A., et al., "The Role of the 5'-Hydroxyl Group of Adenosine in Determining Substrate Specificity for Adenosine Deaminase," *J. Med. Chem.*, 10(5):908-12 (Sep. 1967).
- Browne, et al., "3',3'-didehydro-3'-deoxythymidine (d4T) in Patients with AIDS or AIDS-Related Complex: A Phase I Trial," *J. Infect. Dis.*, 167(1): 21-29 (1993).
- Bryant, M.L., et al., "Antiviral L-Nucleosides Specific for Hepatitis B Virus Infection," *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, 45(1):229-235 (Jan. 2001).
- Cappellacci, et al., "Ribose-modified nucleosides as ligands for adenosine receptors: Synthesis, conformational analysis, and biological evaluation of 1'-C-methyl denosine analogues," *J. Med. Chem.*, vol. 45, 2002, pp. 1196-1202.
- Cappellacci, et al., "Synthesis, Biological Evaluation, and Molecular Modeling of Ribose-Modified Adenosine Analogues as Adenosine Receptor Agonists," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2005), 48(5), 1550-1562.
- Carroll, S.S., "Nucleoside analog inhibitors of hepatitis C virus replication," *Infectious Disorders: Drug Targets* (2006), 6(1), 17-29.
- Chand, Pooran; et al., "Synthesis of (2S,3S,4R,5R)-2-(4-amino-5H-pyrrolo[3,2-d]pyrimidin-7-yl)-5-(hydroxymethyl)-3-methylpyrrolidine-3,4-diol, an analog of potent HCV inhibitor," *Collection Symposium Series* (2005), 7(Chemistry of Nucleic Acid Components), 329-332.
- Chiacchio, et al., "Stereoselective synthesis of 2'-amino-2',3'-dideoxynucleosides by nitron 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition: A new efficient entry toward d4T and its 2-methyl analogue," *J. Org. Chem.*, vol. 64, 1999, pp. 28-36.
- Chiaromonte, et al., "Inhibition of CMP-Sialic Acid Transport into Golgi Vesicles by Nucleoside Monophates," *Biochemistry* 2001, 40, 14260-14267.
- Clark, et al., "Design, Synthesis, and Antiviral Activity of 2'-Deoxy-2'-fluoro-2'-C-methylcytidine, a Potent Inhibitor of Hepatitis C Virus Replication," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2005), 48(17), 5504-5508.
- Coelmont, Lotte, "Ribavirin antagonizes the in vitro anti-hepatitis C virus activity of 2'-C-methylcytidine, the active component of valopicitabine," *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* (2006), 50(10), 3444-3446.
- Colacino, "Review article: Mechanisms for the Anti-Hepatitis B Virus Activity and Mitochondrial Toxicity of Fialuridine (FIAU)," *Antiviral Res.*, 29(2-3): 125-39 (1996).
- Cook, G.S., "Improving the treatment of hepatitis C infection in the UK," *Expert Opinion on Pharmacotherapy*, (2007) vol. 8, No. 2, pp. 183-191.
- Cornberg, M., et al., "Present and future therapy for hepatitis C virus," *Expert review of Anti-Infective Therapy*, (2006) vol. 4, No. 5, pp. 781-793.

- Cretton-Scott, E., et al., "Pharmacokinetics of B-L-2'-Deoxycytidine Prodrugs in Monkeys," *Antiviral res.*, 50:A44 (2001).
- Cui, et al., "Cellular and Molecular Events Leading to Mitochondrial Toxicity of 1-(2-deoxy-2-fluoro-1-B-D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-iodouracil in Human Liver Cells," *J. clin. Invest.*, 95: 555-563 (1995).
- Czernecki, S., et al., "Synthesis of 2'-deoxy-2'-spirocyclopropyl cytidine as potential inhibitor of ribonucleotide diphosphate reductase," *Can. J. Chem.*, vol. 71, 1993, pp. 413-416.
- Dalpiatz, et al., "Temperature dependence of the affinity enhancement of selective adenosine A1 receptor agonism: a thermodynamic analysis," *European Journal of Pharmacology* (2002), 448(2-3), 123-131.
- Davis, "Current Therapy for Chronic Hepatitis C," *Gastroenterology*, 118: S104-S114 (2000).
- Davis, G.L., "New Therapies: Oral Inhibitors and Immune Modulators," *Clinics in Liver Disease*, (2006) vol. 10, No. 4, pp. 867-880.
- Davissou, V.J., et al., "Synthesis of Nucleotide 5'-Diphosphates from 5'-O-Tosyl Nucleosides," *J. Org. Chem.*, 52(9):1794-1801 (1987).
- DeLombaert, et al., "N-Phosphonomethyl Dipeptides and Their Phosphonate Prodrugs. A New Generation of Neutral Endopeptidase (NEP, EC 3.4.24.11) Inhibitors," *J. Med. Chem.*, 37: 498-511.
- Ding, et al., "Synthesis of 2'- β -C-methyl toyocamycin and sangivamycin analogs as potential HCV inhibitors," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* (2005), 15(3), 725-727.
- Ding, et al., "Synthesis of 9-(2- β -C-methyl- β -D-ribofuranosyl)-6-substituted purine derivatives as inhibitors of HCV RNA replication," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* (2005), 15(3), 709-713.
- Dornsife, et al., "In Vitro Potency of Inhibition by Antiviral Drugs of Hematopoietic Progenitor Colony Formation Correlates with Exposure at Hemotoxic Levels in Human Immunodeficiency Virus-Positive Human," *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.*, 40(2): 514-519 (1996).
- Dutartre, H., et al., "General catalytic deficiency of hepatitis C virus RNA polymerase with an S282T mutation and mutually exclusive resistance towards 2'-modified nucleotide analogues," *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, (2006) vol. 50, No. 12, pp. 4161-4169.
- Dymock, et al., "review: Novel Approaches to the Treatment of Hepatitis C Virus Infection," *Antiviral Chemistry & Chemotherapy*, 11(2): 79-95 (2000).
- Eldrup, et al., Oral Session V, Hepatitis C Virus, Flaviviridae; 16th International Conference on Antiviral Research (Apr. 27, 2003, Savannah, Ga.) p. A75-77.
- Eldrup, et al., "Structure-Activity Relationship of Heterobase-Modified 2'-C-Methyl Ribonucleosides as Inhibitors of Hepatitis C Virus RNA Replication," Department of Medicinal Chemistry, Isis Pharmaceuticals, Carlsbad, CA, USA. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2004), 47(21), 5284-5297.
- Eldrup, et al., "Structure-Activity Relationship of Purine Ribonucleosides for Inhibition of Hepatitis C Virus RNA-Dependent RNA Polymerase," Department of Medicinal Chemistry, Isis Pharmaceuticals, Carlsbad, CA, USA. *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2004), 47(9), 2283-2295.
- Farquhar, et al., "Synthesis and Biological Evaluation of Neutral Derivatives of 3-fluoro-2'-deoxyuridine 5'-phosphate," *J. Med. Chem.* 26: 1153 (1983).
- Farquhar, et al., "Synthesis and Biological Evaluation of 9-[5'-(2-oxo-1,3,2-oxazaphosphorinan-2-yl)-B-D-arabinosyl]adenine and 9-[5'-(2-oxo-1,3,2-dioxazaphosphorinan-2-yl)-B-D-arabinosyl]adenine: Potential Neutral Precursors of 9-[B-D-arabino-furanosyl]adenine 5'-monophosphate," *J. Med. Chem.* 28: 1358-1381 (1985).
- Feast, A.A.J., et al., "Studies on the D-Glucosaccharinic Acids," *Acta Chemica Scandinavica* 19(5):1127-1134 (1965).
- Ferrari, et al., "Characterization of Soluble Hepatitis C Virus RNA-Dependent RNA Polymerase Expressed in *Escherichia Coli*," *Journal of Virology*, 73(2), 1649-1654 (1999).
- Fischl, et al., "Zalcitabine Compared with Zidovudine in Patients with Advanced HIV-1 Infection who Received Previous Zidovudine Therapy," *Ann. Intern. Med.*, 18(10): 762-769 (1993).
- Fox, J.J., et al., "Thiolation of nucleosides. II. Synthesis of 5-methyl-2'-deoxycytidine and related pyrimidine nucleosides," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 81: 178-187 (Jan. 5, 1959).
- Franchetti, et al., "Antitumor Activity of C-Methyl- β -D-ribofuranosyladenine Nucleoside Ribonucleotide Reductase Inhibitors," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2005), 48(15), 4983-4989.
- Freed, et al., "Evidence for Acycloxymethyl Esters of Pyrimidine 5'-deoxyribonucleotides as Extracellular Sources of Active 5'-deoxyribonucleotides in Cultured Cells," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 38: 3193-3198 (1989).
- Fujimori, et al., "A Convenient and Stereoselective Synthesis of 2'-Deoxy-[beta]-L-nucleosides," *Nucleosides & Nucleotides*, 11(2-4), 341-349 (1992); only CAPLUS abstract supplied.
- Furukawa, Y., et al., "A novel method for synthesis of purine nucleosides using Friedel-Crafts catalysts," *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, 16(6):1076-1080 (Jun. 1968).
- Galderisi, U., et al., "Antisense oligonucleotides as therapeutic agents," *Journal of Cellular Physiology*, 181(2):251-257 (Nov. 1999).
- Gallo, et al., "2'-C-Methyluridine Phosphoramidite: A New Building Block for the Preparation of RNA Analogues Carrying the 2'-hydroxyl Group," *Tetrahedron*, 57 (2001), 5707-5713.
- Girardet, et al., "Synthesis and Cytotoxicity of 4-Amino-5-oxopyrido[2,3-d]pyrimidine Nucleosides," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2000), 43(20), 3704-3713.
- Gretch, D.R., "Use and interpretation of HCV diagnostic tests in the clinical setting," *Clinics in Liver Disease*, Nov. 1997, vol. 1, No. 3, pp. 547-557.
- Grouiller, et al., "Structural studies on a psicofuranosyl nucleoside, a potential antiviral agent," *J. Pharm. Belg.*, 47(4), 381-3 (1992).
- Gunic, et al., "Synthesis and Cytotoxicity of 4'-C- and 5'-C-substituted Toyocamycins," *Bioorg. Med. Chem.*, 9:163-170 (2001).
- Hassan, et al., "Nucleosides and Nucleotides 151: Conversion of (Z)-2'-(Cyanomethylene)-2'-Deoxyuridines into their (E)-Isomers via Addition of Thiophenol to the Cyanomethylene Moiety Followed by Oxidative Syn-elimination Reactions," *J. Org. Chem.*, vol. 61, 1996, pp. 6261-6267.
- Hassan, et al., "Nucleosides and Nucleotides 156: Chelation-Controlled and Nonchelation-Controlled Diastereofacial Selective Thiophenol Addition Reactions at the 2'-Position of 2'-(Alkoxy-carbonyl)methylene-2'-deoxyuridines: Conversion of (Z)-2'-(Alkoxy-carbonyl)methylene-2'-Deoxyuridines into their (E)-Isomers," *J. Org. Chem.*, vol. 62, 1997, pp. 11-17.
- Hayakawa, et al., "Reaction of organometallic reagents with 2'- and 3'-ketouridine derivatives: synthesis of uracil nucleosides branched at the 2'- and 3'-positions," *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin* (1987), 35(6), 2605-8.
- Hoard, D.E., et al., "Conversion of Mono- and Oligodeoxyribonucleotides to 5'-Triphosphates," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 87(8):1785-1788 (Apr. 20, 1965).
- Holy, A., "Nucleic Acid Components and Their Analogs. CLIII. Preparation of 2'-deoxy-L-Ribonucleosides for the Pyrimidine Series," *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.*, 37(12): 4072-4087 (1972).
- Hossain, et al., "Synthesis of 2'- and 3'-Spiro-isoxazolidine Derivatives of Thymidine & Their Conversions to 2,3'-dideoxy-2', 3'-didehydro-3'-C-substituted nucleosides by Radical Promoted Fragmentation," *Tetrahedron* vol. 49, No. 44, pp. 10133-10156, (1993).
- Hostetler, et al., "Synthesis and Antiretroviral Activity of Phospholipids Analogs of Azidothymidine and Other Antiviral Nucleosides," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 265: 6112-6117 (1990).
- Hostetler, et al., "Greatly Enhanced Inhibition of Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1 Replication in CEM and HT4-6C Cells by 3'-deoxythymidine Diphosphate Dimyristoylglycerol, a Lipid Prodrug of 3'-deoxythymidine," *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.*, 36: 2025-2029 (Sep. 1992).
- Hunston, et al., "Synthesis and Biological Properties of Some Cyclic Phosphotriesters Drived from 2'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine," *J. Med. Chem.* 27:440-444 (1984).
- Iglesias, et al., "Complete and Regioselective Deacetylation of Peracetylated Uridines Using a Lipase," *Biotechnology Letters* 22: 361-365, 2000.
- Iimori, et al., "2'-C-, 3'-C-, and 5'-C-Methylsangivamycins: conformational lock with the methyl group," *Tetrahedron Letters* (1991), 32(49), 7273-6.

- Imori, et al., "A study on conformationally restricted sangivamycins and their inhibitory abilities of protein kinases." *Nucleic Acids Symposium Series* (1992), 27(Nineteenth Symposium on Nucleic Acids Chemistry, 1992), 169-70.
- Ikegashira, K., et al., "Discovery of conformationally constrained tetracyclic compounds as potent hepatitis C virus NS5B RNA polymerase inhibitors," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, (Nov. 30, 2006) vol. 449, No. 24, pp. 6950-6953.
- Imai, K., et al., "Studies on Phosphorylation. IV. Selective Phosphorylation of the Primary Hydroxyl Group in Nucleosides." *J. Org. Chem.*, 34(6): 1547-1550 (Jun. 1969).
- Jones, et al., "Oxidation of Carbohydrates by the Sulfoxide-Carbondiimide and Related Methods," *Methods in Carbohydrate Chemistry*, Whistler, R.L. and Moffatt, J.L. Eds; Academic Press: New York, 1972; 315-322.
- Jones, et al., "4'-substituted Nucleosides. 5. Hydroxymethylation of Nucleoside 5'-aldehydes." *J. Org. Chem.*, 44: 1309-1317 (1979).
- Kakefuda, et al., "Nucleosides and nucleotides. 120. Stereoselective radical deoxygenation of tert-alcohols in the sugar moiety of nucleosides: synthesis of 2',3'-dideoxy-2'-C-methyl- and -2'-C-ethynyl- β -D-threo-pentofuranosyl pyrimidines and adenine as potential antiviral and antitumor agents," *Tetrahedron* (1993), 49(38), 8513-28.
- Kamaike, K., et al., "An efficient method for the synthesis of [4-15N]cytidine, 2'-deoxy[4-15N]cytidine, [6-15N]adenosine, and 2'-deoxy[6-15N]adenosine derivatives," *Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, 15(13): 749-769 (1996).
- Kaneko, M., et al., "A convenient synthesis of cytosine nucleosides," *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, 20:1050-1053 (1972).
- Kempe, T., et al., "Selective 2'-Benzoylation at the Cis 2', 3'-diols of Protected Ribonucleosides. New Solid Phase Synthesis of RNA and DNA-RNA Mixtures," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 10(21):6695-6714 (Nov. 11, 1982).
- Kerr, S.G., et al., "N-(Dialkylamino)Methylene Derivatives of 2'-Deoxycytidine and Arabinocytidine: Physicochemical Studies for Potential Prodrug Applications," *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 83(4): 582-586 (Apr. 1994).
- Khamnei, "Neighboring Group Catalysis in the Design of Nucleotide Prodrugs," *J. Med. Chem.*, 39: 4109-4115 (1996).
- Kim, et al., "A Novel Nucleoside Prodrug-Activating Enzyme: Substrate Specificity of Biphenyl Hydrolase-like Protein," *Molecular Pharmacology* (2004), 1(2), 117-127.
- Klump, et al., "The Novel Nucleoside Analog R1479 (4'-Azidocytidine) is a Potent Inhibitor of NS5B-dependent RNA Synthesis and Hepatitis C Virus Replication in Cell Culture," *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 281, No. 7, pp. 3793-3799, Feb. 17, 2006.
- Kotra, L., et al., "Structure-Activity Relationships of 2'-Deoxy-2', 2'-difluoro-L-erythro-pentofuranosyl Nucleosides," *J. Med. Chem.* 1997, 40, 3635-3644.
- Kucera, et al., "Novel Membrane-Interactive Ether Lipid Analogs that Inhibit Infectious HIV-1 Production and Induce Defective Virus Formation," *AIDS Res. Hum. Retro Viruses*, 6: 491-501 (1990).
- Kuhn, R., et al., "Über eine molekulare Umlagerung von N-Glucosiden," *Jahrg.* 69, 1936, p. 1745-1754.
- Kurtzberg J., et al., "Differential Toxicity of Carbovir and AZT to Human Bone Marrow Hematopoietic Progenitor Cells in Vitro," *Exp. Hematol.*, 18(10): 1094-1095 (1990).
- Lai, V.C.H., et al., "Mutational analysis of bovine viral diarrhoea virus RNA-dependent RNA polymerase," *J. Virol.*, 73(12):10129-10136 (Dec. 1999).
- Landowski, "Nucleoside ester prodrug substrate specificity of liver carboxylesterase," *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics* (2006), 316(2), 572-580.
- Leonard, et al., "5-Amino-5-deoxyribose Derivatives. Synthesis and Use in the Preparation of 'Reversed' Nucleosides," *J. Heterocycl. Chem.*, 3:485-489 (Dec. 1966).
- Le Pogam, et al., "In Vitro Selected Con1 Subgenomic Replicons Resistant to 2'-C-Methyl-Cytidine or to R1479 Show Lack of Cross Resistance," *Virology* 351 (2006), 349-359.
- Le Pogam, et al., "Selection and Characterization of Replicon Variants Dually Resistant to Thumb- and Palm-Binding Nonnucleoside Polymerase Inhibitors of the Hepatitis C Virus," *Journal of Virology*, vol. 80, No. 12, Jun. 2006, p. 6146-6154.
- Lerza, et al., "In Vitro Synergistic Inhibition of Human Bone Marrow Hemopoietic Progenitor Growth by a 3'-azido-3'-deoxy-thymidine, 2', 3'-dideoxycytidine Combination," *Exp. Hematol.*, 25(3): 252-255 (1997).
- Lewis, et al., "Zidovudine Induces Molecular, Biochemical, and Ultrastructural Changes in Rat Skeletal Muscle Mitochondria," *J. Clin. Invest.*, 89(4): 1354-1360 (1992).
- Lewis, et al., "Ultrastructural Changes Associated with Reduced Mitochondrial DNA and Impaired Mitochondrial Function in the Presence of 2',3'-dideoxycytidine," *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.*, 36(9): 2061-2065 (1992).
- Lewis, et al., "Fialuridine and Its Metabolites Inhibit DNA Polymerase γ at Sites of Multiple Adjacent Analog Incorporation, Decrease mtDNA Abundance, and Cause Mitochondrial Structural Defects in Cultured Hepatoblasts," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science, USA*, 93(8): 3592-7 (1996).
- Li, et al., "2'-C-Branched ribonucleosides. 2. Synthesis of 2'-C-beta-trifluoromethyl pyrimidine ribonucleosides," *Org. Lett.*, vol. 3, 2001, pp. 1025-1028.
- Lin, T.S., et al., "Synthesis of Several Pyrimidine L-Nucleoside Analogues as Potential Antiviral Agents," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 51(4): 1055-1068 (1995).
- Lohmann, et al., "Biochemical and Kinetic Analyses of NS5B RNA-dependent RNA Polymerase of the Hepatitis C Virus," *Virology*, 249, 108-118 (1998).
- Lopez Aparicio, F.J., et al., "Synthesis of Saccharinic Acid Derivatives," *Carbohydrate Res.*, 129:99 (1984).
- Lopez-Herrera, F.J., et al., "A New Synthesis of 2-C Methyl-D-Ribono-1, 4-Lactone and the C-/C-13 Fragment of Methylolide," *J. Carbohydrate Chemistry*, 13(5): 767-775 (1994).
- Luh, et al., "A Convenient Method for the Selective Esterification of Amino-Alcohols," *Synthetic Communications*, 8(5): 327-333 (1978).
- Maga, Giovanni, et al., "Lack of stereospecificity of suid pseudorabies virus thymidine kinase," *Biochem. J.*, 294(2): 381-385 (1993).
- Mahmoudian, M., et al., "A Versatile Procedure for the Generation of Nucleoside 5'-Carboxylic Acids Using Nucleoside Oxidase," *Tetrahedron*, Elsevier Science Publishers Amsterdam, NL, vol. 54, No. 28, Jul. 9, 1998.
- Mansour, T.S., et al., "Editorial," *Anti-Infective Agents in Medicinal Chemistry*, (2007) vol. 6, No. 1, pp. 1.
- Markland W., et al., "Broad-spectrum antiviral activity of the IMP dehydrogenase inhibitor VX-497: a comparison with ribavirin and demonstration of antiviral additivity with alpha interferon," *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, Apr. 2000, vol. 44, No. 4, pp. 859-866.
- Martin, J., et al., "Synthesis and Antiviral Activity of Monofluoro and Difluoro Analogues of Pyrimidine Deoxyribonucleosides Against Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV-1)," *J. Med. Chem.* 1990, 33, 2137-2145.
- McCormick, J., et al., "Structure and Total Synthesis of HF-7, a Neuroactive Glyconucleoside Disulfate from the Funnel-Web Spider *Hololena curta*," *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, 1999, vol. 121, pp. 5661-5665.
- McKenzie, et al., "Hepatic Failure and Lactic Acidosis Due to Fialuridine (FIAU), An Investigational Nucleoside Analogue for Chronic Hepatitis B," *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 333(17): 1099-1105 (1995).
- Medina, et al., "Comparison of Mitochondrial Morphology, Mitochondrial DNA Content, and Cell Viability in Cultured Cell Treated with Three Anti-Human Immunodeficiency Virus Dideoxynucleosides," *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.*, 38(8): 1824-8 (1994).
- Meier, et al., "Cyclic Saligenyl Phosphotriesters of 2', 3'-dideoxy-2', 3'-didehydrothymidine (d4T)—A New Pro-Nucleic Approach," *Bioorganic & Med. Chem. Letter* 7(2): 99-104 (1997).
- The Merck Index, 12th edition, 1996, p. 275.
- Meyer, et al., "2'-O-Acyl-6-Thioinosine Cyclic 3', 5'-phosphates as Prodrugs of Thioinosinic Acid," *J. Med. Chem.* 22: 811-815 (1979).
- Miles, et al., "Circular Dichroism of Nucleoside Derivatives. IX. Vicinal Effects on the Circular Dichroism of Pyrimidine Nucleosides," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 92(13): 3872-3881 (1970).

- Moore, et al., "Synthesis of Nucleotide Analogues That Potently and Selectively Inhibit Human DNA Primase," *Biochemistry* (2002), 41(47), 14066-14075.
- Moiseyev, et al., "Determination of the nucleotide conformation in the productive enzyme-substrate complexes of RNA-depolymerases," *FEBS Letters* (1997), 404(2,3), 169-172.
- Murai, et al., "A synthesis and an x-ray analysis of 2'-C-3'-C- and 5'-C-methylsanguivamycins," *Heterocycles* (1992), 33(1), 391-404.
- Neidlein, et al., "Mild Preparation of 1-benzyluloxyminoalkylphosphonic Dichlorides: Application to the Synthesis of Cyclic Phosphonic Diesters and Cyclic Monoester Amides," *Heterocycles* 35: 1185-1203 (1993).
- Nishiguchi, S., et al., "Methods to Detect Substitutions in the Interferon-Sensitivity-Determining Region of Hepatitis C virus 1 b for Prediction of Response to Interferon Therapy," *Hepatology*, Jan. 2001, vol. 33, No. 1, pp. 241-247.
- Nishimura, T. et al., "Studies on Synthetic Nucleosides. Trimethylsilyl Derivatives of Pyrimidine and Purines," *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin* (1964), vol. 12, pp. 352-356.
- Novak, J.J.K., "Chiroptical Properties of 2-Methyl-1,4-Lactones; Revised Absolute Configuration of 2-Deoxy-2-C-Methyl-Erythro-D-Pentono-1, 4-Lactones," *Collection Czechoslov. Chem. Commun.*, 39:869-882 (1974).
- Novak, J.J.K. & Sorm, F., "Nucleic Acid Components and Their Analogues. CXX. 2-C-Methyl-D-Ribose and Its Derivatives," *Collection Czechoslov. Chem. Commun.*, 34:857-866 (1969).
- Olsen, et al., (Oral Session V. Hepatitis C Virus, Flaviviridae; 16th International Conference on Antiviral Research (Apr. 27, 2003, Savannah, Ga.) p. A76).
- Pagliaro, L., et al., "[Hepatology: Old, recent and (maybe) future stories. A narrative review]. *Epatologia: IERI, Oggi E (Forse) Domani*," *Recenti Progressi in Medicina*, (2006) vol. 97, No. 12, pp. 741-750.
- Piantadosi, et al., "Synthesis and Evaluation of Novel Ether Lipid Nucleoside Conjugates for Anti-HIV-1 Activity," *J. Med. Chem.* 34: 1408-1414 (1991).
- Pierra, C., et al., "Comparative Studies of Selected Potential Prodrugs of B-L-dC, A Potent and Selective Anti-HBV Agent," *Antiviral Res.*, 50:A79 (2001), Abstract No. 138.
- Pierra, C., et al., "NM 283, and efficient prodrug of the potent anti-HCV agent 2'-C-methylcytidine," *Nucleosides, Nucleotides and Nucleic Acids* (2005), 24(5-7), 767-770.
- Pierra, C., et al., "Synthesis and Pharmacokinetics of Valopicitabine (NM283), and Efficient Prodrug of the Potent Anti-HCV Agent 2'-C-Methylcytidine," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry* (2006), 49(22), 6614-6620.
- Reist, et al., "Potential anticancer agents. LXXVII. Synthesis of nucleosides of purine-6-thiol(6-mercaptopurine) containing "fraudulent" sugars," *Journal of Organic Chemistry* (1962), 27 3279-83.
- Richman, et al., "The Toxicity of Azidothymidine (AZT) in the Treatment of Patients with AIDS and AIDS-Related Complex," *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 317(4): 192-197 (1987).
- Robins, et al., "Purine Nucleosides. XXIX. The Synthesis of 2'-Deoxy-L-adenosine and 2'-Deoxy-L-guanosine and Their [alpha] Anomers," *Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 35(3), 636-639 (Mar. 1970).
- Rong, et al., "The Synthesis and Conformation of 2'- and 3'-Hypermethylated Tricyclic Nucleosides and Their Use in the Synthesis of Novel 2'- or 3'-Isomeric 4(7)-Substituted Isoxazolidine-nucleosides," *Tetrahedron* vol. 50, No. 16, pp. 4921-4936, (1994).
- Roque-Afonso, AM, et al., "Performance of Trigen hepatitis C virus5' noncoding genotyping kit, a new CLIP sequencing-based assay for hepatitis C virus genotype determination," *Journal of Viral Hepatitis*, Sep. 2002, vol. 9, Issue 5, pp. 385-389.
- Sakthivel, et al., "Direct SNAr amination of fluorinated imidazo[4,5-c]pyridine nucleosides: efficient syntheses of 3-fluoro-3-deazaadenosine analogs," *Tetrahedron Letters* (2005), 46(22), 3883-3887.
- Sakthivel, et al., "Electrophilic fluorination of 5-(cyanomethyl)imidazole-4-carboxylate nucleosides: Facile entry to 3-fluoro-3-deazaadenosine analogues," *Synlett* (2005), (10), 1586-1590.
- Saladino, R., et al., "A new and efficient synthesis of cytidine and adenosine derivatives by dimethyldioxirane oxidation of thiopyrimidine and thiopurine nucleosides," *J. chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1*, 21: 3053-3054 (1994).
- Sandhu, et al., "Evaluation of microdosing strategies for studies in preclinical drug development: Demonstration of linear pharmacokinetics in dogs of a nucleoside analog over a 50-fold dose range," *Drug Metabolism and Disposition* (2004), 32(11), 1254-1259.
- Sato, et al., "C-Nucleoside synthesis. 10. Synthesis of 2'-methylated pyrimidine C-nucleosides," *Tetrahedron Letters* (1980), 21(20), 1971-4.
- Sato, et al., "C-Nucleoside synthesis. 19. Stereocontrolled general synthesis of pyrimidine C-nucleosides having branched-chain sugar moieties," *Bulletin of the Chemical Society of Japan* (1983), 56(9), 2680-99.
- Savochkina, et al., "Substrate properties of c-methylnucleoside triphosphates in RNA syntheses catalyzed by e. coli RNA-polymerase," *Molecular Biology*, 1989, v. 23, No. 6.
- Schiff, E.R., "Emerging strategies for pegylated interferon combination therapy," *Nature Clinical Practice Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, (2007) vol. 4, No. SUPPL. 1, pp. S17-S21.
- Schmit, C., et al., "Synthesis of 2'-Deoxy-2'-Alpha-Monofluoromethyl and Trifluoromethylnucleosides," *Synlett*, Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, DE, No. 4, 1994, pp. 241-242.
- Shim, Jae H., "Recent patents on nucleoside and nucleotide inhibitors for HCV," *Recent Patents on Anti-Infective Drug Discovery* (2006), 1(3), 323-331.
- Smith, et al., "Synthesis of new 2'-beta-C-methyl related tricyclic analogues as anti-HCV agents," *Valeant Pharmaceuticals International*, Costa Mesa, CA, USA. *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* (2004), 14(13), 3517-3520.
- Song, et al., Amino Acid Ester Prodrugs of the Anticancer Agent Gemcitabine: Synthesis, Bioconversion, Metabolic Bioevasion, and hPEPT1-Medicated Transport, *Molecular Pharmaceutics* (2005), 2(2), 157-167.
- Sorbera, L.A., et al., "Valopicitabine: anti-hepatitis C virus drug RNA-directed RNA polymerase (NS5B) inhibitor," *Drugs of the Future* (2006), 31 (4), 320-324.
- Sowden, J., "The Saccharinic Acids," *Adv. Carbohydrate Chem.*, 12:43-46 (1957).
- Spardari, et al., "L-Thymidine is Phosphorylated by Herpes Simplex Virus Type 1 Thymidine Kinase and Inhibits Viral Growth," *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry*, 35(22), 4214-4220 (1992).
- Standing, D.N., et al., "Antiviral Beta-L-Nucleosides Specific for Hepatitis B Virus Infection," *Antiviral Chem. & Chemother.*, 12 (Suppl. 1): 119-129 (2001).
- Starrett, et al., "Synthesis, Oral Bioavailability Determination, and In Vitro Evaluation of Prodrugs of the Antiviral Agents 9-(2-(phosphonomethoxy)ethyl)adenine (PMEA)," *J. Med. Chem.* 37: 1857-1864 (1994).
- Stuyver, et al., "Ribonucleoside Analogue That Block Replication of Bovine Viral Diarrhea and Hepatitis C Viruses in Culture," *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, vol. 47, No. 1, Jan. 2003, p. 244-254.
- Takenuki, et al., "Nucleosides and nucleotides. XLIII. On the stereoselectivity of alkyl addition reaction of pyrimidine 2'-ketonucleosides," *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin* (1990), 38(11), 2947-52.
- Tang, X.-Q., et al., "2'-C-Branched Ribonucleosides: Synthesis of the Phosphoramidite Derivatives of 2'-C-B-Methylcytidine and Their Incorporation into Oligonucleotides," *J. Org. Chem.*, 64(3): 747-754 (1999).
- Tronchet, et al., "72. Synthese et desamination enzymatique des C-hydroxymethyl-3'-et C-methyl-3'-beta-D-xylofuranosyl-9-adenines," *Helv. Chim. Acta*, vol. 62, 1979, pp. 689-695.
- Tyrted, G., et al., "Inhibition of the synthesis of 5-phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate by 3'-deoxyadenosine and structurally related nucleoside analogs," *Biochem. Biophys. Acta*, 155(2): 619-622 (Feb. 26, 1968).
- Vassilev, V., et al., "Bovine Viral Diarrhea Virus Induced Apoptosis Correlates with Increased Intracellular Viral RNA Accumulation," *Virus Research*, 69: 95-107 (2000).

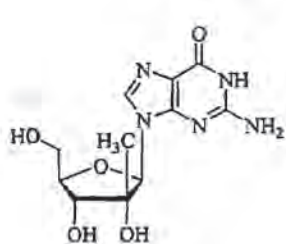
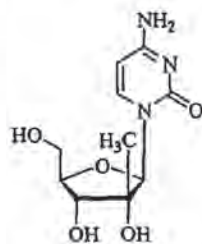
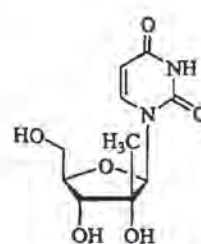
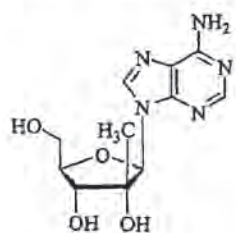
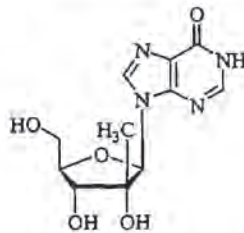
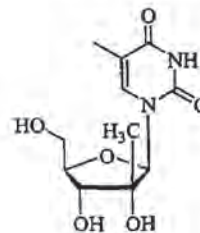
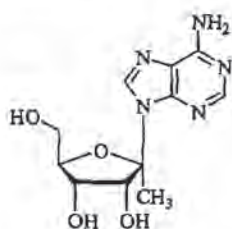
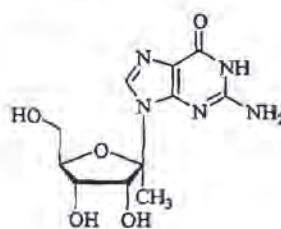
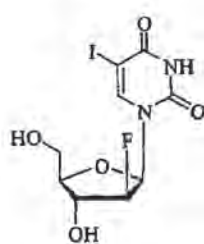
- Velazquez, et al., "Synthesis of '1'-3',5'-bis-O-(tert-butylidimethylsilyl)-beta-D-arabino- and beta-D-ribofuranosyl cytosine-2"-spiro-5''-(4''-amino-1'',2''-oxathiole-2'',2''-dioxide). Analogues of the highly specific anti-HIV-1 agent TSAO-T," *Tetrahedron*, vol. 50, 1994, pp. 11013-11022.
- Verri, A., et al., "Lack of enantiospecificity of human 2'-deoxycytidine kinase: relevance for the activation of B-L-deoxycytidine analogs as antineoplastic and antiviral agents," *Molecular Pharmacology*, 51(1): 132-138 (Jan. 1997).
- Verri, A., et al., "Relaxed Enantioselectivity of Human Mitochondrial Thymidine Kinase and Chemotherapeutic Uses of L-Nucleoside Analogues," *Biochem. J.*, 328(1): 317-320 (Nov. 15, 1997).
- Von Buren, et al., "Branched oligodeoxynucleotides: automated synthesis and triple helical hybridization studies," *Tetrahedron* (1995), 51(31), 8491-506.
- Von Janta-Lipinski, M., et al., "Newly Synthesized L-Enantiomers of 3'-Fluoro-Modified B-2'-Deoxyribonucleoside 5'-Triphosphates Inhibit Hepatitis B DNA Polymerase but not the Five Cellular SNA Polymerases α , β , γ , δ and ϵ Nor HIV-1 Reverse Transcriptase," *J. Medicinal Chemistry*, 41(12): 2040-2046 (May 21, 1998).
- Wagner, D., et al., "Preparation and Synthetic Utility of Some Organotin Derivatives of Nucleosides," *J. Org. Chem.*, 39(1):24-30 (1974).
- Weinberg, et al., "Effect of Antiviral Drugs and Hematopoietic Growth Factors on In Vitro Erythropoiesis," *Mt. Sinai J. Med.* 1998; 65(1): 5-13.
- Whistler, R. L., and BeMiller, J.N., "[118]'a'-D-Glucosaccharino-1,4-Lactone," *Methods in Carbohydrate Chemistry*, 2:484-485 (1963).
- Wohnsland, A., et al., "Viral determinants of resistance to treatment in patients with hepatitis C," *Clinical Microbiology reviews*, (2007) vol. 20, No. 1, pp. 23-38.
- Wolf, et al., "New 2'-C-Branched-Chain Sugar Nucleoside Analogs With Potential Antiviral or Antitumor Activity," *Synthesis*, Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, DE, No. 8, Aug. 1992 (1992-08), pp. 773-778.
- Yarchoan, et al., "Long-Term Toxicity / Activity Profile of 2', 3'-dideoxyinosine in AIDS or AIDS-Related Complex," *The Lancet*, 336 (8714): 526-529 (1990).
- Yoshida, et al., "Reversal of Azidothymidine-Induced Bone Marrow Suppression by 2', 3'-Dideoxythymidine as Studied by Hemopoietic Clonal Culture," *AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses*, 6(7): 929-932 (1990).
- Zemlicka, J., et al., "Aminoacyl Derivatives of Nucleosides, Nucleotides, and polynucleotides. VIII. The Preparation of 2'(3)-O-L-Phenylalanyluridine, -cytidine, - Adenonine, -inosine, -guanosine and 2'-Deoxy-3'-O-L-Phenylalanyladenosine," *Collection Czechoslov. Chem. Commun.* 1969, vol. 43, No. 13.
- Zemlicka, J., et al., "Substrate Specificity of Ribosomal Peptidyltransferase. Peptidyltransferase. Effect of Modifications in the Heterocyclic, Carbohydrate and Amino Acid Moiety of 2'(3)-O-L-Phenyladenosine," *Biochemistry*, Dec. 2, 1975, vol. 14, No. 24.
- Zintchenko, et al., "Substrate Specificity of Uridine and Purine Nucleoside Phosphorylases of the Whole Cells of *Escherichia coli*," *Nucleic Acids Research, Symposium Series No. 18*, 1987, pp. 137-140.
- Zintchenko, et al., "Substrate specificity of uridine and purine nucleoside phosphorylases in whole cells of *E. coli*" *Biopolymers & a cell*, 1988, v. 4, No. 6.
- Zon, "Cyclophosphamide Analogues," Chapter 4 in *Progress in Medicinal Chemistry*, vol. 19, G. P. Ellis and G. B. West, Eds., pp. 205-246 (1982).
- U.S. Appl. No. 11/644,304, filed Dec. 22, 2006, Mayes, et al.
- Aldhal, et al., Enhanced antiviral efficacy for valopicitabine plus PEG-interferon in hepatitis C patients with HCV genotype-1 infection, *Journal of Hepatology* 2005, vol. 42, Supplement 2, p. 39-40.
- Altmann, et al., The Effects of 2'- and 3'-Alkyl Substituents on Oligonucleotide Hybridization and Stability, *Biorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letter*, 1994, 4, No. 16, 1969-74.
- Beigelman et al., "New synthesis of 2'-C-methylnucleosides starting from D-glucose and D-ribose," *Carbohydrate Res.*, 1987, 166, 219-232.
- Cavelier, F., et al., "Studies of Selective Boc Removal in the Presence of Silyl Ethers," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 37: 5131-5134 (1996).
- Chen et al., *Heterocycles*, vol. 28, No. 2, 1989, pp. 593-601.
- Clark, et al., Synthesis and antiviral activity . . . , *Biorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 16, 2006, 1712-1715.
- Daniels et al., "Tautomerism of Uracil and Thymine in Aqueous Solution: Spectroscopic Evidence", *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA*, vol. 69, No. 9, pp. 2488-2491, 1972.
- Farquhar et al., "Biologically reversible phosphate-protective groups," *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 1983, 72(3): 324.
- Francesco, et al. *Antiviral Research* 58 (2003) 1-16.
- Gerotto, et al., Effect of retreatment with interferon alone or interferon plus ribavirin on hepatitis C virus quasiespecies diversification in nonresponder patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Journal of Virology*, Sep. 1999, vol. 73, No. 9, p. 7241-7247.
- Grunnagel, et al., "Preparation of D-Tagatose," *Justus Liebigs Annalen der Chemie* (1969), 721: 234-5.
- Ilattori, H. et al., "Nucleosides and Nucleotides 158" *Journal of Medicinal Chemistry, American Chemical Society*, vol. 39, 1996, pp. 5005-5001.
- Hodge, et al., "Amadori Rearrangement Products," *Methods in Carbohydrate Chemistry* (1963), 2: 99-107.
- Hu, et al., Viral, host and interferon-related factors modulating the effect of interferon therapy for hepatitis C virus infection. *Journal of Viral Hepatitis*, 2001, vol. 8, p. 1-18.
- Kohn, et al., "A new method for the synthesis of furanose derivatives of aldohexoses," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1965, 87(23): 5475-80.
- McFarlin, et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1958, 80, 5372-76.
- Scheibler, C., "Ueber das Saccharin und die Saccharinsäure," *Chemische Berichte*, 13:2212-2217 1980.
- Shalaby, et al., "Conformations and Structure Studies of Sugar Lactones in the Solid State. Part II. The Molecular Structure of α -D-Glucosaccharino-Y-Lactone: 2-C-Methyl-D-Ribo-Pentono-1,4-lactone," *Carbohydrate Research* (1994), 264(2), 191-8.
- Shi, et al., Synthesis and in vitro Anti-HCV Activity of β -d- and 1'-2'-Deoxy-2'-Fluororibonucleosides, Nucleosides, Nucleotides & Nucleic Acids 2005, vol. 23, Nos. 5-7, pp. 875-879.
- Sinko, et al., Carrier-Mediated Intestinal Absorption of Valacyclovir, the L-Valyl Ester Prodrug of Acyclovir, *Biopharmaceutics & Drug Disposition* 1998, vol. 19, pp. 209-217.
- Sinkula et al., "Rationale for design of biologically reversible drug derivatives: prodrugs," *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 1975, 64: 181-210.
- Sundberg, et al., *Advanced Organic Chemistry, Part b*, 1990, pp. 232 and 236.
- Walton et al., "Branched-chain sugar nucleosides. A new type of biologically active nucleoside," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 88(19): 4524-25 (1966).
- Wu, et al., Targeting NS5B RNA-dependent RNA polymerase for anti-HCV chemotherapy. *Current Drug Targets—Infectious Disorders* 2003, vol. 3, p. 207-219.
- Zedeck et al., "Inhibition of the steroid induced synthesis of Δ^5 -3-ketosteroid isomerase in *Pseudomonas testosteroni* by a new purine deoxyribonucleoside analog: 6-chloro-8-aza-9-cyclopentylpurine," *Mol. Phys.*, 3(4):386-95 (1967).
- Zhou, et al., Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of valopicitabine, *Journal of Hepatology* 2005, vol. 42 (Suppl. 2), p. 229.
- Zintchenko, et al., "2', 3' & 5'-uridine methyl derivatives in micro-biological transfection," *Doklady Akad. Nauk v.* 297(3), pp. 731-734 (1987).
- Office Action dated Oct. 1, 2003 from U.S. Appl. No. 09/863,816.
- Notice of Allowance dated Jun. 23, 2004 from U.S. Appl. No. 09/863,816.
- Office Action dated Aug. 27, 2003 from U.S. Appl. No. 09/864,078.
- Notice of Allowance dated Feb. 19, 2004 from U.S. Appl. No. 09/864,078.
- Notice of Allowance dated May 17, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,135.
- Office Action dated Apr. 5, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,135.
- Notice of Allowance dated Mar. 9, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,136.
- Office Action dated Jul. 28, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,142.
- Office Action dated Sep. 20, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,142.

Office Action dated Dec. 10, 2008 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,142.
 Office Action dated Nov. 15, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,142.
 Office Action dated Mar. 29, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,142.
 Office Action dated Feb. 26, 2008 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,142.
 Notice of Allowance dated Dec. 28, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,692.
 Office Action dated Apr. 5, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,692.
 Notice of Allowance dated Dec. 27, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,693.
 Office Action dated Apr. 6, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,693.
 Notice of Allowance dated Dec. 27, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,694.
 Office Action dated Apr. 6, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,694.
 Office Action dated Sep. 10, 2004 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,976.
 Office Action dated May 19, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,976.
 Notice of Allowance dated Oct. 13, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/602,976.
 Office Action dated Aug. 15, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/608,907.

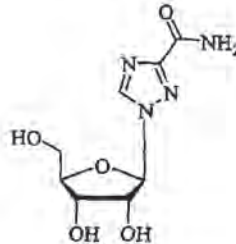
Office Action dated May 31, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/608,907.
 Office Action dated Jan. 28, 2008 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/608,907.
 Office Action dated Nov. 26, 2008 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/608,907.
 Office Action dated Aug. 2, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/609,298.
 Office Action dated Jul. 10, 2008 from U.S. Appl. No. 10/609,298.
 Office Action dated Oct. 5, 2005 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,440.
 Office Action dated Dec. 5, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,440.
 Office Action dated Jun. 13, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,440.
 Office Action dated Oct. 16, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,440.
 Office Action dated Aug. 21, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,441.
 Notice of Allowance dated Jun. 22, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,441.
 Notice of Allowance dated Jan. 8, 2008 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,441.
 Office Action dated Aug. 7, 2006 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,442.
 Office Action dated May 16, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,442.
 Office Action dated Nov. 28, 2007 from U.S. Appl. No. 11/005,442.

* cited by examiner

Figure 1: Chemical Structure of Illustrative Nucleosides

 β -D-2'-CH₃-riboG β -D-2'-CH₃-riboC β -D-2'-CH₃-riboU β -D-2'-CH₃-riboA β -D-2'-CH₃-riboI β -D-2'-CH₃-riboT β -D-1'-CH₃-riboA β -D-1'-CH₃-riboG

FIAU



Ribavirin

Figure 2: Screening Pharmacokinetics of β -D-2'-CH₃-riboG in Cynomolgus Monkeys

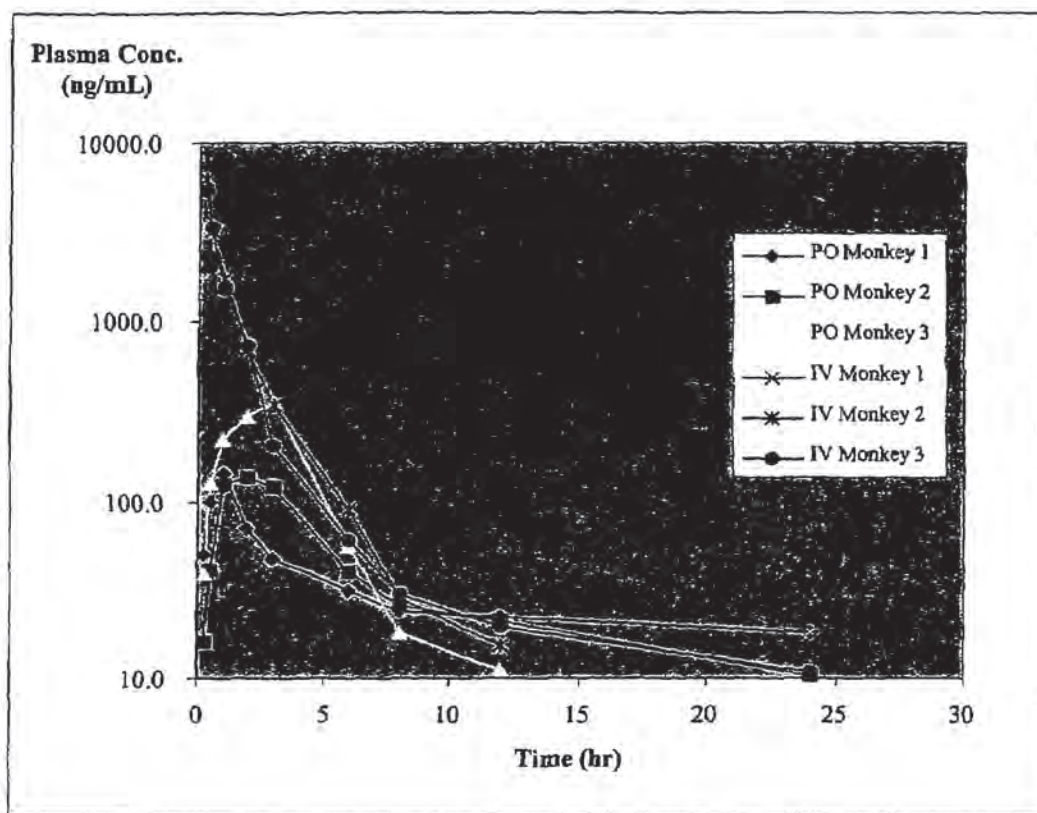
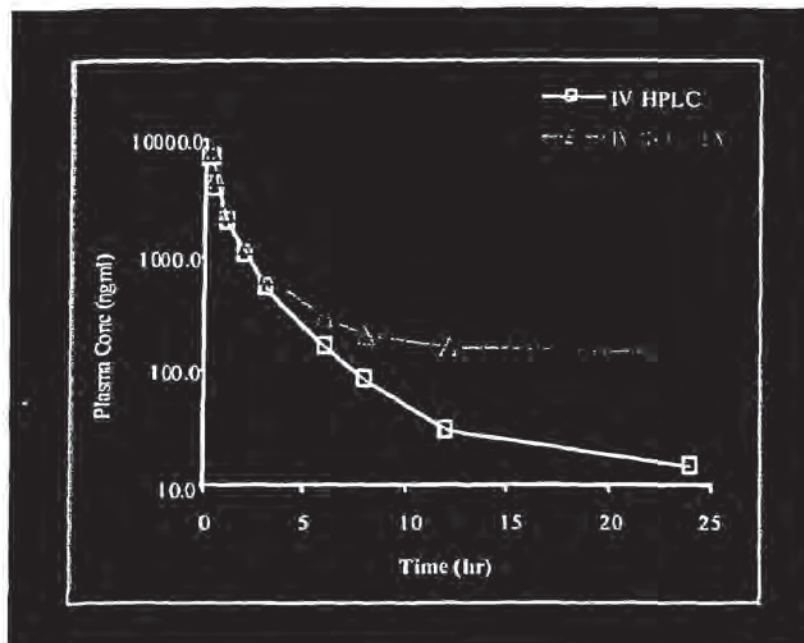
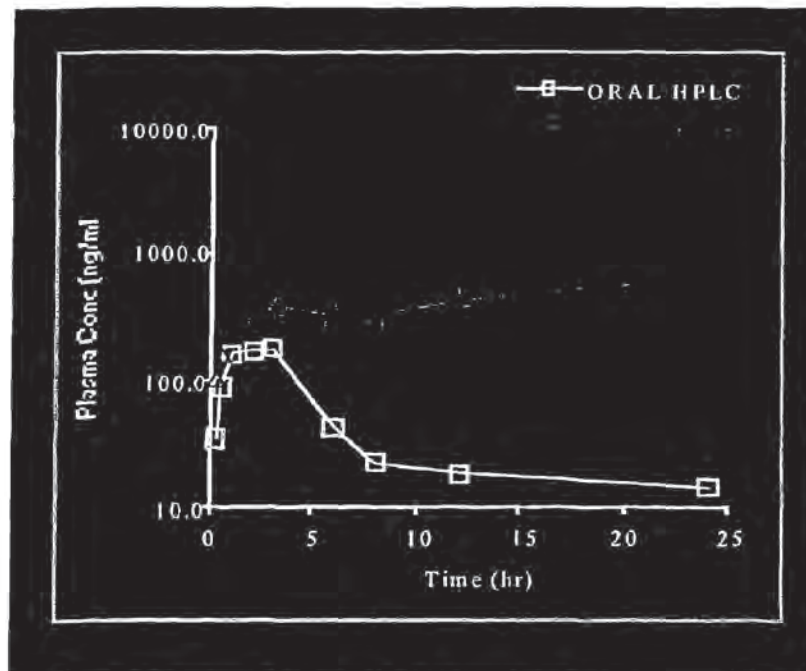


Figure 3: Pharmacokinetics of β -D-2'-CH₃-riboG in Cynomolgus Monkeys**Figure 3a****Figure 3b**

1

METHODS AND COMPOSITIONS FOR TREATING HEPATITIS C VIRUS

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention is in the area of pharmaceutical chemistry, and in particular, is a compound, method and composition for the treatment of hepatitis C virus. This application is a continuation of U.S. application Ser. No. 09/864,078, filed on May 23, 2001, now U.S. Pat. No. 6,914,054, which claims priority to U.S. provisional application No. 60/206,585, filed on May 23, 2000, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The hepatitis C virus (HCV) is the leading cause of chronic liver disease worldwide. (Boyer, N. et al. *J. Hepatol.* 32:98-112, 2000). HCV causes a slow growing viral infection and is the major cause of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (Di Besceglie, A. M. and Bacon, B. R., *Scientific American*, Oct.: 80-85, (1999); Boyer, N. et al. *J. Hepatol.* 32:98-112, 2000). An estimated 170 million persons are infected with HCV worldwide. (Boyer, N. et al. *J. Hepatol.* 32:98-112, 2000). Cirrhosis caused by chronic hepatitis C infection accounts for 8,000-12,000 deaths per year in the United States, and HCV infection is the leading indication for liver transplant.

HCV is known to cause at least 80% of posttransfusion hepatitis and a substantial proportion of sporadic acute hepatitis. Preliminary evidence also implicates HCV in many cases of "idiopathic" chronic hepatitis, "cryptogenic" cirrhosis, and probably hepatocellular carcinoma unrelated to other hepatitis viruses, such as Hepatitis B Virus (HBV). A small proportion of healthy persons appear to be chronic HCV carriers, varying with geography and other epidemiological factors. The numbers may substantially exceed those for HBV, though information is still preliminary; how many of these persons have subclinical chronic liver disease is unclear. (The Merck Manual, ch. 69, p. 901, 16th ed., (1992)).

HCV has been classified as a member of the virus family Flaviviridae that includes the genera flaviviruses, pestiviruses, and haptoviruses which includes hepatitis C viruses (Rice, C. M., Flaviviridae: The viruses and their replication. In: Fields Virology, Editors: Fields, B. N., Knipe, D. M., and Howley, P. M., Lippincott-Raven Publishers, Philadelphia, Pa., Chapter 30, 931-959, 1996). HCV is an enveloped virus containing a positive-sense single-stranded RNA genome of approximately 9.4 kb. The viral genome consists of a 5' untranslated region (UTR), a long open reading frame encoding a polyprotein precursor of approximately 3011 amino acids, and a short 3' UTR. The 5' UTR is the most highly conserved part of the HCV genome and is important for the initiation and control of polyprotein translation. Translation of the HCV genome is initiated by a cap-independent mechanism known as internal ribosome entry. This mechanism involves the binding of ribosomes to an RNA sequence known as the internal ribosome entry site (IRES). An RNA pseudoknot structure has recently been determined to be an essential structural element of the HCV IRES. Viral structural proteins include a nucleocapsid core protein (C) and two envelope glycoproteins, E1 and E2. HCV also encodes two proteinases, a zinc-dependent metalloproteinase encoded by the NS2-NS3 region and a serine proteinase encoded in the NS3 region. These proteinases are required for cleavage of specific regions of the precursor polyprotein into mature peptides. The carboxyl half of nonstructural protein 5, NS5B, contains the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. The function

2

of the remaining nonstructural proteins, NS4A and NS4B, and that of NS5A (the amino-terminal half of nonstructural protein 5) remain unknown.

A significant focus of current antiviral research is directed toward the development of improved methods of treatment of chronic HCV infections in humans (Di Besceglie, A. M. and Bacon, B. R., *Scientific American*, Oct.: 80-85, (1999)). Currently, there are two primary antiviral compounds, Ribavirin and interferon-alpha, which are used for the treatment of chronic HCV infections in humans.

Treatment of HCV Infection with Ribavirin

Ribavirin (1- β -D-ribofuranosyl-1,2,4-triazole-3-carboxamide) is a synthetic, non-interferon-inducing, broad spectrum antiviral nucleoside analog sold under the trade name, Virazole (The Merck Index, 11th edition, Editor: Budavari, S., Merck & Co., Inc., Rahway, N.J., p1304, 1989). U.S. Pat. No. 3,798,209 and RE29,835 disclose and claim Ribavirin. Ribavirin is structurally similar to guanosine, and has in vitro activity against several DNA and RNA viruses including Flaviviridae (Gary L. Davis, *Gastroenterology* 118:S104-S114, 2000).

Ribavirin reduces serum amino transferase levels to normal in 40% of patients, but it does not lower serum levels of HCV-RNA (Gary L. Davis, *Gastroenterology* 118:S104-S114, 2000). Thus, Ribavirin alone is not effective in reducing viral RNA levels. Additionally, Ribavirin has significant toxicity and is known to induce anemia.

Treatment of HCV Infection with Interferon

Interferons (IFNs) are compounds that have been commercially available for the treatment of chronic hepatitis for nearly a decade. IFNs are glycoproteins produced by immune cells in response to viral infection. IFNs inhibit viral replication of many viruses, including HCV, and when used as the sole treatment for hepatitis C infection, IFN suppresses serum HCV-RNA to undetectable levels. Additionally, IFN normalizes serum amino transferase levels. Unfortunately, the effects of IFN are temporary and a sustained response occurs in only 8%-9% of patients chronically infected with HCV (Gary L. Davis, *Gastroenterology* 118:S104-S114, 2000).

A number of patents disclose HCV treatments using interferon-based therapies. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 5,980,884 to Blatt et al. discloses methods for retreatment of patients afflicted with HCV using consensus interferon. U.S. Pat. No. 5,942,223 to Bazer et al. discloses an anti-HCV therapy using ovine or bovine interferon-tau. U.S. Pat. No. 5,928,636 to Alber et al. discloses the combination therapy of interleukin-12 and interferon alpha for the treatment of infectious diseases including HCV. U.S. Pat. No. 5,908,621 to Glue et al. discloses the use of polyethylene glycol modified interferon for the treatment of HCV. U.S. Pat. No. 5,849,696 to Chretien et al. discloses the use of thymosins, alone or in combination with interferon, for treating HCV. U.S. Pat. No. 5,830,455 to Valtuena et al. discloses a combination HCV therapy employing interferon and a free radical scavenger. U.S. Pat. No. 5,738,845 to Imakawa discloses the use of human interferon tau proteins for treating HCV. Other interferon-based treatments for HCV are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,676,942 to Testa et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,372,808 to Blatt et al., and U.S. Pat. No. 5,849,696.

Combination of Interferon and Ribavirin

The combination of IFN and Ribavirin for the treatment of HCV infection has been reported to be effective in the treatment of IFN naive patients (Battaglia, A. M. et al., *Ann. Pharmacother.* 34:487-494, 2000). Results are promising for this combination treatment both before hepatitis develops or

when histological disease is present (Berenguer, M. et al. *Antivir. Ther.* 3(Suppl. 3):125-136, 1998). Side effects of combination therapy include hemolysis, flu-like symptoms, anemia, and fatigue. (Gary L. Davis. *Gastroenterology* 118: S104-S114, 2000).

Additional References Disclosing Methods to Treat HCV Infections

A number of HCV treatments are reviewed by Bymock et al. in *Antiviral Chemistry & Chemotherapy*, 11:2; 79-95 (2000).

Several substrate-based NS3 protease inhibitors have been identified in the literature, in which the scissile amide bond of a cleaved substrate is replaced by an electrophile, which interacts with the catalytic serine. Attwood et al. (1998) *Antiviral peptide derivatives*, 98/22496; Attwood et al. (1999), *Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy* 10:259-273; Attwood et al. (1999) Preparation and use of amino acid derivatives as anti-viral agents, German Patent Publication DE 19914474; Tung et al. (1998) Inhibitors of serine proteases, particularly hepatitis C virus NS3 protease, WO 98/17679. The reported inhibitors terminate in an electrophile such as a boronic acid or phosphonate. Llinas-Brunet et al. (1999) Hepatitis C inhibitor peptide analogues, WO 99/07734. Two classes of electrophile-based inhibitors have been described, alphaketoamides and hydrazinouraeas.

The literature has also described a number of non-substrate-based inhibitors. For example, evaluation of the inhibitory effects of 2,4,6-trihydroxy-3-nitro-benzamide derivatives against HCV protease and other serine proteases has been reported. Sudo, K. et al., (1997) *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 238:643-647; Sudo, K. et al. (1998) *Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy* 9:186. Using a reverse-phase HPLC assay, the two most potent compounds identified were RD3-4082 and RD3-4078, the former substituted on the amide with a 14 carbon chain and the latter processing a para-phenoxyphenyl group.

Thiazolidine derivatives have been identified as micromolar inhibitors, using a reverse-phase HPLC assay with an NS3/4A fusion protein and NS5A/5B substrate. Sudo, K. et al. (1996) *Antiviral Research* 32:9-18. Compound RD-1-6250, possessing a fused cinnamoyl moiety substituted with a long alkyl chain, was the most potent against the isolated enzyme. Two other active examples were RD4 6205 and RD4 6193.

Other literature reports screening of a relatively small library using an ELISA assay and the identification of three compounds as potent inhibitors, a thiazolidine and two benzimidazoles. Kakinuchi N. et al. *J. EBS Letters* 421:217-220; Takeshita N. et al., *Analytical Biochemistry* 247:242-246, 1997. Several U.S. patents disclose protease inhibitors for the treatment of HCV. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 6,004,933 to Spruce et al. discloses a class of cysteine protease inhibitors for inhibiting HCV endopeptidase 2. U.S. Pat. No. 5,990,276 to Zhang et al. discloses synthetic inhibitors of hepatitis C virus NS3 protease. The inhibitor is a subsequence of a substrate of the NS3 protease or a substrate of the NS4A cofactor. The use of restriction enzymes to treat HCV is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,538,865 to Reyes et al.

Isolated from the fermentation culture broth of *Streptomyces* sp., Sch 68631, a phenanthrenequinone, possessed micromolar activity against HCV protease in a SDS-PAGE and autoradiography assay. Chu M. et al., *Tetrahedron Letters* 37:7229-7232, 1996. In another example by the same authors, Sch 351633, isolated from the fungus *Penicillium griseofulvum*, demonstrated micromolar activity in a scintillation proximity assay. Chu M. et al., *Bioorganic and Medicinal*

Chemistry Letters 9:1949-1952. Nanomolar potency against the HCV NS3 protease enzyme has been achieved by the design of selective inhibitors based on the macromolecule eglin c. Eglin c, isolated from leech, is a potent inhibitor of several serine proteases such as *S. griseus* proteases A and B, α -chymotrypsin, chymase and subtilisin. Qasim M. A. et al., *Biochemistry* 36:1598-1607, 1997.

HCV helicase inhibitors have also been reported. U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,358 to Diana G. D. et al.; PCT Publication No. WO 97/36554 of Diana G. D. et al. There are a few reports of HCV polymerase inhibitors: some nucleotide analogues, gliotoxin and the natural product cerulenin. Ferrari R. et al., *Journal of Virology* 73:1649-1654, 1999; Lohmann V. et al., *Virology* 249:108-118, 1998.

Antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides complementary to sequence stretches in the 5' non-coding region of the HCV are reported as efficient inhibitors of HCV gene expression in in vitro translation and IlcpG2 IICV-luciferase cell culture systems. Alt M. et al., *Hepatology* 22:707-717, 1995. Recent work has demonstrated that nucleotides 326-348 comprising the 3' end of the NCR and nucleotides 371-388 located in the core coding region of the HCV RNA are effective targets for antisense-mediated inhibition of viral translation. Alt M. et al., *Archives of Virology* 142:589-599, 1997. U.S. Pat. No. 6,001,990 to Wands et al. discloses oligonucleotides for inhibiting the replication of HCV. PCT Publication No. WO 99/29350 discloses compositions and methods of treatment for hepatitis C infection comprising the administration of antisense oligonucleotides that are complementary and hybridizable to HCV-RNA. U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,857 to Han et al. disclose nucleic acids corresponding to the sequence of the pestivirus homology box IV area for controlling the translation of HCV. Antisense oligonucleotides as therapeutic agents have been recently reviewed (Galderisi U. et al., *Journal of Cellular Physiology* 181:251-257, 1999).

Other compounds have been reported as inhibitors of IRES-dependent translation in HCV. Japanese Patent Publication JP-08268890 of Ikeda N et al.; Japanese Patent Publication JP-10101591 of Kai, Y. et al. Nuclease-resistant ribozymes have been targeted at the IRES and recently reported as inhibitors in an HCV-poliovirus chimera plaque assay. Maccjak D. J. et al., *Hepatology* 30 abstract 995, 1999. The use of ribozymes to treat HCV is also disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,043,077 to Barber et al., and U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,869,253 and 5,610,054 to Draper et al.

Other patents disclose the use of immune system potentiating compounds for the treatment of HCV. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 6,001,799 to Chretien et al. discloses a method of treating hepatitis C in non-responders to interferon treatment by administering an immune system potentiating dose of thymosin or a thymosin fragment. U.S. Pat. No. 5,972,347 to Eder et al. and U.S. Pat. No. 5,969,109 to Bona et al. disclose antibody-based treatments for treating HCV.

U.S. Pat. No. 6,034,134 to Gold et al. discloses certain NMDA receptor agonists having immunomodulatory, antimalarial, anti-Borna virus and anti-Hepatitis C activities. The disclosed NMDA receptor agonists belong to a family of 1-amino-alkylcyclohexanes. U.S. Pat. No. 6,030,960 to Morris-Natschke et al. discloses the use of certain alkyl lipids to inhibit the production of hepatitis-induced antigens, including those produced by the HCV virus. U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,757 to Chojkier et al. discloses the use of vitamin E and other antioxidants to treat hepatic disorders including HCV. U.S. Pat. No. 5,858,389 to Elsherbi et al. discloses the use of squalene for treating hepatitis C. U.S. Pat. No. 5,849,800 to Smith et al discloses the use of amantadine for treatment of Hepatitis C. U.S. Pat. No. 5,846,964 to Ozeki et al. discloses

5

the use of bile acids for treating HCV. U.S. Pat. No. 5,491,135 to Blough et al. discloses the use of N-(phosphonoacetyl)-L-aspartic acid to treat flaviviruses such as HCV.

Other compounds proposed for treating HCV include plant extracts (U.S. Pat. No. 5,837,257 to Tsai et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,725,859 to Omer et al., and U.S. Pat. No. 6,056,961), piperidenes (U.S. Pat. No. 5,830,905 to Diana et al.), benzene-dicarboxamides (U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,388 to Diana et al.), polyadenylic acid derivatives (U.S. Pat. No. 5,496,546 to Wang et al.), 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (U.S. Pat. No. 5,026,687 to Yarchoan et al.), benzimidazoles (U.S. Pat. No. 5,891,874 to Colacino et al.).

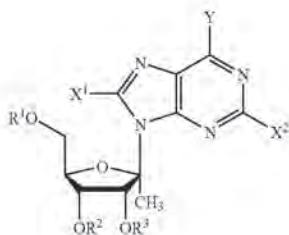
In light of the fact that the hepatitis C virus has reached epidemic levels worldwide, and has tragic effects on the infected patient, there remains a strong need to provide new effective pharmaceutical agents to treat hepatitis C that has low toxicity to the host.

Therefore, it is an object of the present invention to provide a compound, method and composition for the treatment of a host infected with hepatitis C virus.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Compounds, methods and compositions for the treatment of hepatitis C infection are described that include an effective hepatitis C treatment amount of a β -D- or β -L-nucleoside of the Formulas (I)-(XVIII), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof.

In a first principal embodiment, a compound of Formula I, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H, phosphate (including mono-, di- or triphosphate and a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate;

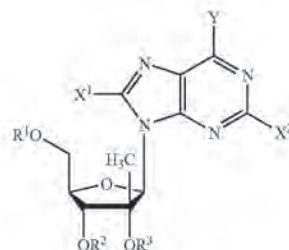
Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^4 ;

X^1 and X^2 are independently selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4NR^1 or SR^5 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

6

In a second principal embodiment, a compound of Formula II, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



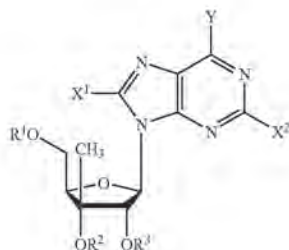
wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^4 ;

X^1 and X^2 are independently selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4NR^1 or SR^5 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a third principal embodiment, a compound of Formula III, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl,

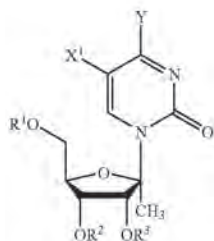
7

wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^5 ;

X^1 and X^2 are independently selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4NR^5 or SR^5 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a fourth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula IV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H, phosphate (including mono-, di- or triphosphate and a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate;

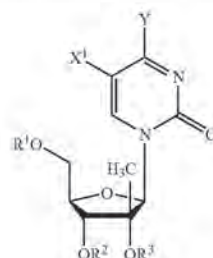
Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^5 ;

X^1 is selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4NR^5 or SR^5 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

8

In a fifth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula V, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



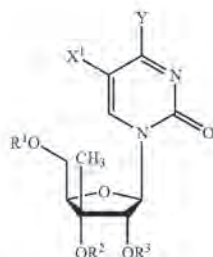
wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^5 ;

X^1 is selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4NR^5 or SR^5 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a sixth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula VI, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when

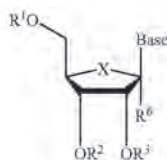
9

administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^5 ;

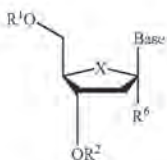
X^1 is selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^5 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

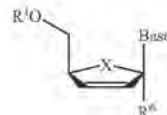
In a seventh principal embodiment, a compound selected from Formulas VII, VIII and IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



(VII)



(VIII)



(IX)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

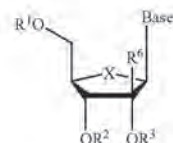
R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, 2-Br-ethyl, $-C(O)O$ (alkyl), $-C(O)O$ (lower alkyl), $-O$ (acyl), $-O$ (lower acyl), $-O$ (alkyl), $-O$ (lower alkyl), $-O$ (alkenyl), CF_3 , chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , NH_2 , $-NH$ (lower alkyl), $-NH$ (acyl), $-N$ (lower alkyl)₂, $-N$ (acyl)₂; and

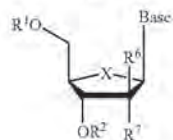
X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

10

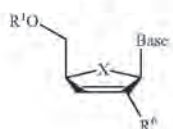
In a eighth principal embodiment, a compound of Formulas X, XI and XII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



(X)



(XI)



(XII)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

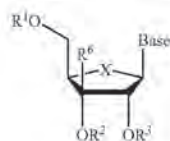
R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, $-C(O)O$ (alkyl), $-C(O)O$ (lower alkyl), $-O$ (acyl), $-O$ (lower acyl), $-O$ (alkyl), $-O$ (lower alkyl), $-O$ (alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , NH_2 , $-NH$ (lower alkyl), $-NH$ (acyl), $-N$ (lower alkyl)₂, $-N$ (acyl)₂;

R^7 is hydrogen, OR^3 , hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, $-C(O)O$ (alkyl), $-C(O)O$ (lower alkyl), $-O$ (acyl), $-O$ (lower acyl), $-O$ (alkyl), $-O$ (lower alkyl), $-O$ (alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO_2 , NH_2 , $-NH$ (lower alkyl), $-NH$ (acyl), $-N$ (lower alkyl)₂, $-N$ (acyl)₂; and

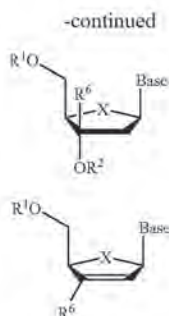
X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

In a ninth principal embodiment a compound selected from Formulas XIII, XIV and XV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



(XIII)

11



wherein:

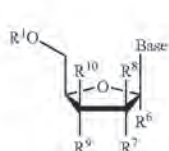
Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(alkenyl), —O(alkynyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂; and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a tenth principal embodiment the invention provides a compound of Formula XVI, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹ and R² are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ or R² is independently H or phosphate; R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl),

12

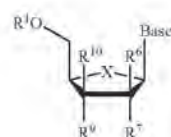
—C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ and R⁸ are independently hydrogen, OR², hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; alternatively, R⁷ and R⁹, R⁷ and R¹⁰, R⁸ and R⁹, or R⁸ and R¹⁰ can come together to form a pi bond; and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a eleventh principal embodiment the invention provides a compound of Formula XVII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹ and R² are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ or R² is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

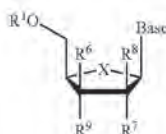
R¹⁰ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine;

alternatively, R⁷ and R⁹, or R⁷ and R¹⁰ can come together to form a pi bond; and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

13

In an twelfth principal embodiment, the invention provides a compound of Formula XVIII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



(XVIII)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹ and R² independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ or R² is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ and R⁸ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(lower-alkyl)amino;

R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; alternatively, R⁷ and R⁸, or R⁸ and R⁹ can come together to form a pi bond;

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

The βD- and β-L-nucleosides of this invention may inhibit HCV polymerase activity. Nucleosides can be screened for their ability to inhibit HCV polymerase activity in vitro according to screening methods set forth more particularly herein. One can readily determine the spectrum of activity by evaluating the compound in the assays described herein or with another confirmatory assay.

In one embodiment the efficacy of the anti-HCV compound is measured according to the concentration of compound necessary to reduce the plaque number of the virus in vitro, according to methods set forth more particularly herein, by 50% (i.e. the compound's EC₅₀). In preferred embodiments the compound exhibits an EC₅₀ of less than 25, 15, 10, 5, or 1 micromolar.

In another embodiment, the active compound can be administered in combination or alternation with another anti-HCV agent. In combination therapy, an effective dosage of two or more agents are administered together, whereas during alternation therapy an effective dosage of each agent is administered serially. The dosages will depend on absorption, inactivation, and excretion rates of the drug as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art. It is to be noted that dosage values will also vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens and schedules

14

should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions.

Nonlimiting examples of antiviral agents that can be used in combination with the compounds disclosed herein include:

(1) an interferon and/or ribavirin (Battaglia, A. M. et al., *Ann. Pharmacother.* 34:487-494, 2000); Berenguer, M. et al. *Antivir. Ther.* 3(Suppl. 3):125-136, 1998);

(2) Substrate-based NS3 protease inhibitors (Attwood et al., *Antiviral peptide derivatives*, PCT WO 98/22496, 1998; Attwood et al., *Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy* 10:259-273, 1999; Attwood et al., Preparation and use of amino acid derivatives as anti-viral agents, German Patent Publication DE 19914474; Tung et al. Inhibitors of serine proteases, particularly hepatitis C virus NS3 protease, PCT WO 98/17679), including alphaketoamides and hydrazinoureas, and inhibitors that terminate in an electrophile such as a boronic acid or phosphonate. Llinas-Brunet et al. Hepatitis C inhibitor peptide analogues, PCT WO 99/07734.

(3) Non-substrate-based inhibitors such as 2,4,6-trihydroxy-3-nitro-benzamide derivatives (Sudo K. et al., *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 238:643-647, 1997; Sudo K. et al. *Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy* 9:186, 1998), including RD34082 and RD3-4078, the former substituted on the amide with a 14 carbon chain and the latter processing a para-phenoxyphenyl group;

(4) Thiazolidine derivatives which show relevant inhibition in a reverse-phase HPLC assay with an NS3/4A fusion protein and NS5A/5B substrate (Sudo K. et al., *Antiviral Research* 32:9-18, 1996), especially compound RD-1-6250, possessing a fused cinnamoyl moiety substituted with a long alkyl chain, RD4 6205 and RD4 6193;

(5) Thiazolidines and benzanilides identified in Kakiuchi N. et al. *J. EBS Letters* 421:217-220; Takeshita N. et al. *Analytical Biochemistry* 247:242-246, 1997;

(6) A phenan-threnequinone possessing activity against HCV protease in a SDS-PAGE and autoradiography assay isolated from the fermentation culture broth of *Streptomyces* sp., Sch 68631 (Chu M. et al., *Tetrahedron Letters* 37:7229-7232, 1996), and Sch 351633, isolated from the fungus *Penicillium griseofulvum*, which demonstrates activity in a scintillation proximity assay (Chu M. et al., *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 9:1949-1952);

(7) Selective NS3 inhibitors based on the macromolecule elgin c, isolated from leech (Qasim M. A. et al., *Biochemistry* 36:1598-1607, 1997);

(8) HCV helicase inhibitors (Diana G. D. et al., Compounds, compositions and methods for treatment of hepatitis C, U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,358; Diana G. D. et al., Piperidine derivatives, pharmaceutical compositions thereof and their use in the treatment of hepatitis C, PCT WO 97/36554);

(9) HCV polymerase inhibitors such as nucleotide analogues, gliotoxin (Ferrari R. et al. *Journal of Virology* 73:1649-1654, 1999), and the natural product cerulenin (Lohmann V. et al., *Virology* 249:108-118, 1998);

(10) Antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides (S-ODN) complementary to sequence stretches in the 5' non-coding region (NCR) of the HCV (Alt M. et al., *Hepatology* 22:707-717, 1995), or nucleotides 326-348 comprising the 3' end of the NCR and nucleotides 371-388 located in the core coding region of the HCV RNA

15

(Alt M. et al., *Archives of Virology* 142:589-599, 1997; Galderisi U. et al., *Journal of Cellular Physiology* 181: 251-257, 1999);

(11) Inhibitors of IRES-dependent translation (Ikeda N et al., Agent for the prevention and treatment of hepatitis C, Japanese Patent Publication JP-08268890; Kai Y. et al. Prevention and treatment of viral diseases, Japanese Patent Publication JP-10101591);

(12) Nuclease-resistant ribozymes (Maccjak D. J. et al, *Hepatology* 30 abstract 995, 1999); and

(13) Other miscellaneous compounds including 1-amino-alkylcyclohexanes (U.S. Pat. No. 6,034,134 to Gold et al.), alkyl lipids (U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,757 to Chojkier et al.), vitamin E and other antioxidants (U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,757 to Chojkier et al.), squalene, amantadine, bile acids (U.S. Pat. No. 5,846,964 to Ozeki et al.), N(phosphonoacetyl)-L-aspartic acid, (U.S. Pat. No. 5,830,905 to Diana et al.), benzenedicarboxamides (U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,388 to Diana et al.), polyadenylic acid derivatives (U.S. Pat. No. 5,496,546 to Wang et al.), 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (U.S. Pat. No. 5,026,687 to Yarchoan et al.), and benzimidazoles (U.S. Pat. No. 5,891,874 to Colacino et al.).

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

FIG. 1 provides the structure of various non-limiting examples of nucleosides of the present invention, as well as other known nucleosides, FIAU and Ribavirin, which are used as comparative examples in the text.

FIG. 2 is a line graph of the pharmacokinetics (plasma concentrations) of β -D-2'-CH₃-riboG administered to six Cynomolgus Monkeys over time after administration.

FIGS. 3a and 3b are line graphs of the pharmacokinetics (plasma concentrations) of β -D-2'-CH₃-riboG administered to Cynomolgus Monkeys either intravenously (3a) or orally (3b) over time after administration.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The invention as disclosed herein is a compound, method and composition for the treatment of hepatitis C in humans or other host animals, that includes administering an effective HCV treatment amount of a β -D- or β -L-nucleoside as described herein or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. The compounds of this invention either possess antiviral (i.e., anti-HCV) activity, or are metabolized to a compound that exhibits such activity.

In summary, the present invention includes the following features:

(a) β -D- and β -L-nucleosides, as described herein, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs thereof;

(b) β -D- and β -L-nucleosides as described herein, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs thereof for use in the treatment or prophylaxis of an HCV infection, especially in individuals diagnosed as having an HCV infection or being at risk for becoming infected by HCV;

(c) use of these β -D- and β -L-nucleosides, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs thereof in the manufacture of a medicament for treatment of an HCV infection;

(d) pharmaceutical formulations comprising the β -D- or β -L-nucleosides or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent;

16

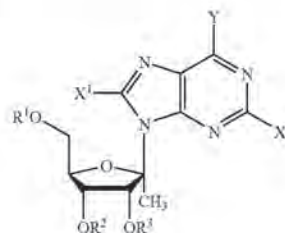
(e) β -D- and β -L-nucleosides as described herein substantially in the absence of enantiomers of the described nucleoside, or substantially isolated from other chemical entities;

(f) processes for the preparation of β -D- and β -L-nucleosides, as described in more detail below; and

(g) processes for the preparation of β -D- and β -L-nucleosides substantially in the absence of enantiomers of the described nucleoside, or substantially isolated from other chemical entities.

I. Active Compound, and Physiologically Acceptable Salts and Prodrugs Thereof

In a first principal embodiment, a compound of Formula I, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H, phosphate (including mono-, di- or triphosphate and a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate;

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴R⁵ or SR⁴;

X¹ and X² are independently selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴NR⁵ or SR⁵; and

R⁴ and R⁵ are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula I, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H or phosphate (preferably H);

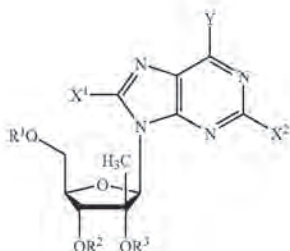
X¹ is H;

X² is H or NH₂; and

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, NH₂ or OH.

In a second principal embodiment, a compound of Formula II, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:

17



wherein:

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴R⁵ or SR⁴;

X¹ and X² are independently selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴NR⁵ or SR⁵; and

R⁴ and R⁵ are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula II, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

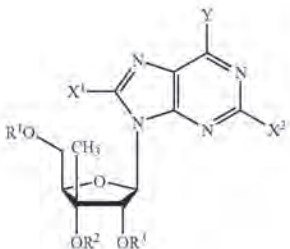
R¹, R² and R³ are independently H or phosphate (preferably H);

X¹ is H;

X² is H or NH₂; and

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, NH₂ or OH.

In a third principal embodiment, a compound of Formula III, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (in-

18

cluding lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴R⁵ or SR⁴;

X¹ and X² are independently selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴NR⁵ or SR⁵; and

R⁴ and R⁵ are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula III, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

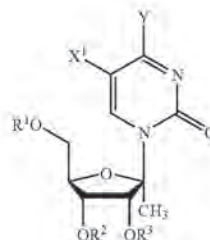
R¹, R² and R³ are independently H or phosphate (preferably H);

X¹ is H;

X² is H or NH₂; and

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, NH₂ or OH.

In a fourth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula IV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H, phosphate (including mono-, di- or triphosphate and a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate;

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴R⁵ or SR⁴;

X¹ is selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR⁴, NR⁴NR⁵ or SR⁵; and

19

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

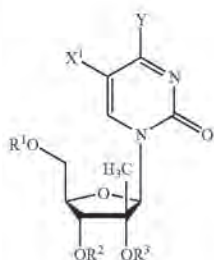
In a preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula IV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H or phosphate (preferably H);

X^1 is H or CH_3 ; and

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, NH_2 or OH.

In a fifth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula V, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^4 ;

X^1 is selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^4 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

In a preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula V, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

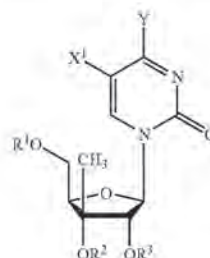
R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H or phosphate (preferably H);

X^1 is H or CH_3 ; and

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, NH_2 or OH.

20

In a sixth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula VI, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



(V)

wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate; and Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^4 ;

X^1 is selected from the group consisting of H, straight chained, branched or cyclic alkyl, CO-alkyl, CO-aryl, CO-alkoxyalkyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, OR^4 , NR^4R^5 or SR^4 ; and

R^4 and R^5 are independently hydrogen, acyl (including lower acyl), or alkyl (including but not limited to methyl, ethyl, propyl and cyclopropyl).

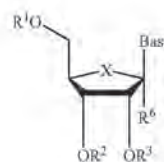
In a preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula VI, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H or phosphate (preferably H);

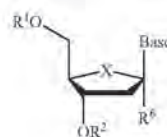
X^1 is H or CH_3 ; and

Y is hydrogen, bromo, chloro, fluoro, iodo, NH_2 or OH.

In a seventh principal embodiment, a compound selected from Formulas VII, VIII and IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:

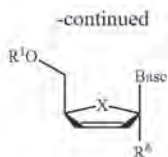


(VII)



(VIII)

21



(IX)

5

10

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, 2-Br-ethyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), CF₃, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂; and

X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a first preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula VII, VIII or IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are independently hydrogen or phosphate;R⁶ is alkyl; andX is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a second preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula VII, VIII or IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; R¹, R² and R³ are hydrogens;

R⁶ is alkyl; andX is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

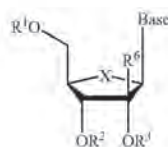
In a third preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula VII, VIII or IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are independently hydrogen or phosphate;R⁶ is alkyl; and

X is O,

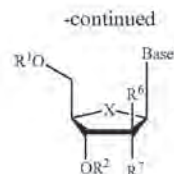
In a eighth principal embodiment, a compound of Formula X, XI or XII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



(X)

65

22



(XI)

(XII)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹, R² or R³ is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ is hydrogen, OR³, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂; and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a first preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula X, XI or XII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are independently hydrogen or phosphate;R⁶ is alkyl; andX is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a second preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula X, XI or XII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹, R² and R³ are hydrogens;R⁶ is alkyl; andX is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

23

In a third preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula X, XI or XII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

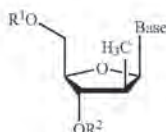
Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is alkyl; and

X is O.

In even more preferred subembodiments, a compound of Formula XI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided:



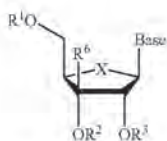
(XI)

wherein:

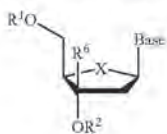
Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; optionally substituted with an amine or cyclopropyl (e.g., 2-amino, 2,6-diamino or cyclopropyl guanosine); and

R^1 and R^2 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 or R^2 is independently H or phosphate.

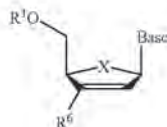
In a ninth principal embodiment a compound selected from Formula XIII, XIV or XV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided:



(XIII)



(XIV)



(XV)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (in-

24

cluding lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 , R^2 or R^3 is independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, $-C(O)O(alkyl)$, $-C(O)O(lower\ alkyl)$, $-O(acyl)$, $-O(lower\ acyl)$, $-O(alkyl)$, $-O(lower\ alkyl)$, $-O(alkenyl)$, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , NH_2 , $-NH(lower\ alkyl)$, $-NH(acyl)$, $-N(lower\ alkyl)_2$, $-N(acyl)_2$; and

X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

In a first preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XIII, XIV or XV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently hydrogen or phosphate;

R^6 is alkyl; and

X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

In a second preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XIII, XIV or XV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are hydrogens;

R^6 is alkyl; and

X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

In a third preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XIII, XIV or XV, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, is provided wherein:

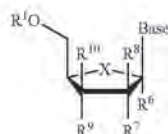
Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently hydrogen or phosphate;

R^6 is alkyl; and

X is O.

In a tenth principal embodiment the invention provides a compound of Formula XVI, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



(XVI)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^1 and R^2 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 and R^2 are independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, $-C(O)O(alkyl)$,

25

—C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; alternatively, R⁷ and R⁹, R⁷ and R¹⁰, R⁸ and R⁹, or R⁸ and R¹⁰ can come together to form a pi bond; and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a first preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a second preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a third preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceuti-

26

cally acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a fourth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In a fifth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR¹; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a sixth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂,

amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a seventh preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In an eighth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a ninth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a tenth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate

(including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O.

In an eleventh preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a twelfth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a thirteenth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In a fourteenth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O.

In even more preferred subembodiments, a compound of Formula XVI, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which:

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is guanine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is cytosine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is thymine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is uracil; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is phosphate; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is ethyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is propyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is butyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

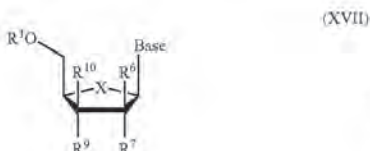
(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ is hydrogen and R⁹ is hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is S;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is SO₂;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ and R¹⁰ are hydrogen; and (6) X is CH₂;

In a eleventh principal embodiment the invention provides a compound of Formula XVII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹ is H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R¹⁰ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine;

alternatively, R⁷ and R⁹, or R⁷ and R¹⁰ can come together to form a pi bond; and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a first preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)-amino; (5) R¹⁰ is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a second preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R¹⁰ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a third preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂,

31

amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)-amino; (5) R^{10} is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In a fourth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently OR^2 ; (5) R^{10} is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

In a fifth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently OR^2 ; (5) R^{10} is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In a sixth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently hydrogen, OR^2 , alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R^{10} is H; and (6) X is O.

In a seventh preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine

32

base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently OR^2 ; (5) R^{10} is H; and (6) X is O.

In an eighth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently hydrogen, OR^2 , alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)-amino; (5) R^{10} is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO_2 , or CH_2 .

In a ninth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO_2 , amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently OR^2 ; (5) R^{10} is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO_2 , or CH_2 .

In a tenth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R^1 is independently H or phosphate; (3) R^6 is alkyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are independently OR^2 ; (5) R^{10} is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO_2 , or CH_2 .

In even more preferred subembodiments, a compound of Formula XVII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-drug, is provided in which:

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is guanine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is cytosine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is thymine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is uracil; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R^1 is phosphate; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is ethyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is propyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is butyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

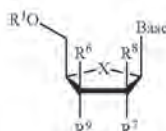
(1) Base is adenine; (2) R^1 is hydrogen; (3) R^6 is methyl; (4) R^7 and R^9 are hydroxyl; (5) R^{10} is hydrogen; and (6) X is S;

33

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R¹⁰ is hydrogen; and (6) X is SO₂; or

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R¹⁰ is hydrogen; and (6) X is CH₂.

In a twelfth principal embodiment the invention provides a compound of Formula XVIII, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof:



(XVIII)

wherein:

Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is hydrogen, hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, lower alkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino;

R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; alternatively, R⁷ and R⁹, or R⁸ and R⁹ can come together to form a pi bond;

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a first preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

34

In a second preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a third preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

In a fourth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In a fifth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or pro-

35

drug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a sixth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine, or iodine; and (6) X is O.

In a seventh preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, O-alkenyl, chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino, or di(loweralkyl)amino; (5) R⁸ is H; and (6) X is O.

In an eighth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl (including lower alkyl), alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, hydroxy, O-alkyl, O-alkenyl, chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, NO₂, amino, loweralkylamino or di(low-

36

eralkyl)amino; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a ninth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ is H; and (6) X is O, S, SO₂, or CH₂.

In a tenth preferred subembodiment, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which: (1) Base is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein; (2) R¹ is independently H or phosphate; (3) R⁶ is alkyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are independently OR²; (5) R⁸ is H; and (6) X is O.

In even more preferred subembodiments, a compound of Formula XVIII, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, is provided in which:

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is guanine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is cytosine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is thymine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is uracil; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is phosphate; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is ethyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is propyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is butyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is O;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is S;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is SO₂;

(1) Base is adenine; (2) R¹ is hydrogen; (3) R⁶ is methyl; (4) R⁷ and R⁹ are hydroxyl; (5) R⁸ is hydrogen; and (6) X is CH₂.

The β-D- and β-L-nucleosides of this invention may inhibit HCV polymerase activity. Nucleosides can be screened for their ability to inhibit HCV polymerase activity in vitro according to screening methods set forth more particularly herein. One can readily determine the spectrum of activity by evaluating the compound in the assays described herein or with another confirmatory assay.

In one embodiment the efficacy of the anti-HCV compound is measured according to the concentration of compound necessary to reduce the plaque number of the virus in vitro, according to methods set forth more particularly herein, by 50% (i.e. the compound's EC₅₀). In preferred embodiments the compound exhibits an EC₅₀ of less than 15 or 10 micromolar, when measured according to the polymerase assay described in Ferrari et al., *Jnl. of Vir.*, 73:1649-1654, 1999; Ishii et al., *Hepatology*, 29:1227-1235, 1999; Lohmann et al., *Jnl. of Bio. Chem.*, 274:10807-10815, 1999; or Yamashita et al., *Jnl. of Bio. Chem.*, 273:15479-15486, 1998.

The active compound can be administered as any salt or prodrug that upon administration to the recipient is capable of providing directly or indirectly the parent compound, or that exhibits activity itself. Nonlimiting examples are the pharmaceutically acceptable salts (alternatively referred to as "physiologically acceptable salts"), and a compound that has been alkylated or acylated at the 5'-position or on the purine or

pyrimidine base (a type of "pharmaceutically acceptable pro-drug"). Further, the modifications can affect the biological activity of the compound, in some cases increasing the activity over the parent compound. This can easily be assessed by preparing the salt or prodrug and testing its antiviral activity according to the methods described herein, or other methods known to those skilled in the art.

II. Definitions

The term alkyl, as used herein, unless otherwise specified, refers to a saturated straight, branched, or cyclic, primary, secondary, or tertiary hydrocarbon of typically C₁ to C₁₀, and specifically includes methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, t-butyl, pentyl, cyclopentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, isohexyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, 3-methylpentyl, 2,2-dimethylbutyl, and 2,3-dimethylbutyl. The term includes both substituted and unsubstituted alkyl groups. Moieties with which the alkyl group can be substituted are selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, sulfate, phosphonic acid, phosphate, or phosphonate, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, et al., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, hereby incorporated by reference.

The term lower alkyl, as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to a C₁ to C₄ saturated straight, branched, or if appropriate, a cyclic (for example, cyclopropyl) alkyl group, including both substituted and unsubstituted forms. Unless otherwise specifically stated in this application, when alkyl is a suitable moiety, lower alkyl is preferred. Similarly, when alkyl or lower alkyl is a suitable moiety, unsubstituted alkyl or lower alkyl is preferred.

The term alkylamino or arylamino refers to an amino group that has one or two alkyl or aryl substituents, respectively.

The term "protected" as used herein and unless otherwise defined refers to a group that is added to an oxygen, nitrogen, or phosphorus atom to prevent its further reaction or for other purposes. A wide variety of oxygen and nitrogen protecting groups are known to those skilled in the art of organic synthesis.

The term aryl, as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to phenyl, biphenyl, or naphthyl, and preferably phenyl. The term includes both substituted and unsubstituted moieties. The aryl group can be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, sulfate, phosphonic acid, phosphate, or phosphonate, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, et al., *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

The term alkaryl or alkylaryl refers to an alkyl group with an aryl substituent. The term aralkyl or arylalkyl refers to an aryl group with an alkyl substituent.

The term halo, as used herein, includes chloro, bromo, iodo, and fluoro.

The term purine or pyrimidine base includes, but is not limited to, adenine, N⁶-alkylpurines, N⁶-acyl purines (wherein acyl is C(O)(alkyl, aryl, alkylaryl, or arylalkyl), N⁶-benzylpurine, N⁶-halopurine, N⁶-vinylpurine, N⁶-acetylenic purine, N⁶-acyl purine, N⁶-hydroxyalkyl purine, N⁶-thioalkyl purine, N²-alkylpurines, N²-alkyl-6-thiopurines, thymine, cytosine, 5-fluorocytosine, 5-methylcytosine, 6-azapyrimidine, including 6-azacytosine, 2- and/or 4-mercaptopyrimidine, uracil, 5-halouracil, including 5-fluorou-

racil, C⁵-alkylpyrimidines, C⁵-benzylpyrimidines, C⁵-halopyrimidines, C⁵-vinylpyrimidine, C⁵-acetylenic pyrimidine, C⁵-acyl pyrimidine, C⁵-hydroxyalkyl purine, C⁵-amidopyrimidine, C⁵-cyanopyrimidine, C⁵-nitropyrimidine, C⁵-aminopyrimidine, N²-alkylpurines, N²-alkyl-6-thiopurines, 5-azacytidinyl, 5-azauracilyl, triazolopyridinyl, imidazolopyridinyl, pyrrolopyrimidinyl, and pyrazolopyrimidinyl. Purine bases include, but are not limited to, guanine, adenine, hypoxanthine, 2,6-diaminopurine, and 6-chloropurine. Functional oxygen and nitrogen groups on the base can be protected as necessary or desired. Suitable protecting groups are well known to those skilled in the art, and include trimethylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, t-butyltrimethylsilyl, and t-butylphenylsilyl, trityl, alkyl groups, and acyl groups such as acetyl and propionyl, methanesulfonyl, and p-toluene-sulfonyl.

The term acyl refers to a carboxylic acid ester in which the non-carbonyl moiety of the ester group is selected from straight, branched, or cyclic alkyl or lower alkyl, alkoxyalkyl including methoxymethyl, aralkyl including benzyl, aryloxy-alkyl such as phenoxymethyl, aryl including phenyl optionally substituted with chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo, C₁ to C₄ alkyl or C₁ to C₄ alkoxy, sulfonate esters such as alkyl or aralkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl, the mono, di or triphosphate ester, trityl or monomethoxytrityl, substituted benzyl, trialkylsilyl (e.g. dimethyl-t-butylsilyl) or diphenylmethylsilyl. Aryl groups in the esters optimally comprise a phenyl group. The term "lower acyl" refers to an acyl group in which the non-carbonyl moiety is a lower alkyl.

As used herein, the term "substantially free of" or "substantially in the absence of" refers to a nucleoside composition that includes at least 85 or 90% by weight, preferably 95% to 98% by weight, and even more preferably 99% to 100% by weight, of the designated enantiomer of that nucleoside. In a preferred embodiment, in the methods and compounds of this invention, the compounds are substantially free of enantiomers.

Similarly, the term "isolated" refers to a nucleoside composition that includes at least 85 or 90% by weight, preferably 95% to 98% by weight, and even more preferably 99% to 100% by weight, of the nucleoside, the remainder comprising other chemical species or enantiomers.

The term "independently" is used herein to indicate that the variable which is independently applied varies independently from application to application. Thus, in a compound such as RⁿXYRⁿ, wherein Rⁿ is "independently carbon or nitrogen," both Rⁿ can be carbon, both Rⁿ can be nitrogen, or one Rⁿ can be carbon and the other Rⁿ nitrogen.

The term host, as used herein, refers to an unicellular or multicellular organism in which the virus can replicate, including cell lines and animals, and preferably a human. Alternatively, the host can be carrying a part of the hepatitis C viral genome, whose replication or function can be altered by the compounds of the present invention. The term host specifically refers to infected cells, cells transfected with all or part of the HCV genome and animals, in particular, primates (including chimpanzees) and humans. In most animal applications of the present invention, the host is a human patient. Veterinary applications, in certain indications, however, are clearly anticipated by the present invention (such as chimpanzees).

The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug" is used throughout the specification to describe any pharmaceutically acceptable form (such as an ester, phosphate ester, salt of an ester or a related group) of a nucleoside compound which, upon administration to a patient, provides the nucleoside compound. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include

those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic or organic bases and acids. Suitable salts include those derived from alkali metals such as potassium and sodium, alkaline earth metals such as calcium and magnesium, among numerous other acids well known in the pharmaceutical art. Pharmaceutically acceptable prodrugs refer to a compound that is metabolized, for example hydrolyzed or oxidized, in the host to form the compound of the present invention. Typical examples of prodrugs include compounds that have biologically labile protecting groups on a functional moiety of the active compound. Prodrugs include compounds that can be oxidized, reduced, aminated, deaminated, hydroxylated, dehydroxylated, hydrolyzed, dehydrolyzed, alkylated, dealkylated, acylated, deacylated, phosphorylated, dephosphorylated to produce the active compound. The compounds of this invention possess antiviral activity against HCV, or are metabolized to a compound that exhibits such activity.

III. Nucleotide Salt or Prodrug Formulations

In cases where compounds are sufficiently basic or acidic to form stable nontoxic acid or base salts, administration of the compound as a pharmaceutically acceptable salt may be appropriate. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are organic acid addition salts formed with acids, which form a physiological acceptable anion, for example, tosylate, methanesulfonate, acetate, citrate, malonate, tartrate, succinate, benzoate, ascorbate, α -ketoglutarate, and α -glycerophosphate. Suitable inorganic salts may also be formed, including, sulfate, nitrate, bicarbonate, and carbonate salts.

Pharmaceutically acceptable salts may be obtained using standard procedures well known in the art, for example by reacting a sufficiently basic compound such as an amine with a suitable acid affording a physiologically acceptable anion. Alkali metal (for example, sodium, potassium or lithium) or alkaline earth metal (for example calcium) salts of carboxylic acids can also be made.

Any of the nucleosides described herein can be administered as a nucleotide prodrug to increase the activity, bioavailability, stability or otherwise alter the properties of the nucleoside. A number of nucleotide prodrug ligands are known. In general, alkylation, acylation or other lipophilic modification of the mono, di or triphosphate of the nucleoside will increase the stability of the nucleotide. Examples of substituent groups that can replace one or more hydrogens on the phosphate moiety are alkyl, aryl, steroids, carbohydrates, including sugars, 1,2-diacylglycerol and alcohols. Many are described in R. Jones and N. Bischofberger, *Antiviral Research*, 27 (1995) 1-17. Any of these can be used in combination with the disclosed nucleosides to achieve a desired effect.

The active nucleoside can also be provided as a 5'-phosphoether lipid or a 5'-ether lipid, as disclosed in the following references, which are incorporated by reference herein: Kucera, L. S., N. Iyer, E. Leake, A. Raben, Modest E. K., D. L. W., and C. Piantadosi, 1990, "Novel membrane-interactive ether lipid analogs that inhibit infectious HIV-1 production and induce defective virus formation," *AIDS Res. Hum. Retro Viruses*, 6:491-501; Piantadosi, C., J. Marasco C. J., S. L. Morris-Natschke, K. L. Meyer, F. Gumus, J. R. Surles, K. S. Ishaq, L. S. Kucera, N. Iyer, C. A. Wallen, S. Piantadosi, and E. J. Modest, 1991, "Synthesis and evaluation of novel ether lipid nucleoside conjugates for anti-HV activity," *J. Med. Chem.* 34:1408-1414; Hostetler, K. Y., D. D. Richman, D. A. Carson, L. M. Stuhmiller, G. M. T. van Wijk, and H. van den Bosch, 1992, "Greatly enhanced inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in CEM and HT4-6C cells by 3'-deoxythymidine diphosphate dimyristoylglycerol,

a lipid prodrug of 3'-deoxythymidine," *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 36:2025-2029; Hostetler, K. Y., L. M. Stuhmiller, H. B. Lenting, H. van den Bosch, and D. D. Richman, 1990, "Synthesis and antiretroviral activity of phospholipid analogs of azidothymidine and other antiviral nucleosides," *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:61127.

Nonlimiting examples of U.S. patents that disclose suitable lipophilic substituents that can be covalently incorporated into the nucleoside, preferably at the 5'-OH position of the nucleoside or lipophilic preparations, include U.S. Pat. No. 5,149,794 (Sep. 22, 1992, Yatvin et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,194,654 (Mar. 16, 1993, Hostetler et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,223,263 (Jun. 29, 1993, Hostetler et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,256,641 (Oct. 26, 1993, Yatvin et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,411,947 (May 2, 1995, Hostetler et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,463,092 (Oct. 31, 1995, Hostetler et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,543,389 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,543,390 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin et al.); U.S. Pat. No. 5,543,391 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin et al.); and U.S. Pat. No. 5,554,728 (Sep. 10, 1996, Basava et al.), all of which are incorporated herein by reference. Foreign patent applications that disclose lipophilic substituents that can be attached to the nucleosides of the present invention, or lipophilic preparations, include WO 89/02733, WO 90/00555, WO 91/16920, WO 91/18914, WO 93/00910, WO 94/26273, WO 96/15132, EP 0 350 287, EP 93917054.4, and WO 91/19721.

IV. Combination and Alternation Therapy

It has been recognized that drug-resistant variants of HCV can emerge after prolonged treatment with an antiviral agent. Drug resistance most typically occurs by mutation of a gene that encodes for an enzyme used in viral replication. The efficacy of a drug against HCV infection can be prolonged, augmented, or restored by administering the compound in combination or alternation with a second, and perhaps third, antiviral compound that induces a different mutation from that caused by the principle drug. Alternatively, the pharmacokinetics, biodistribution or other parameter of the drug can be altered by such combination or alternation therapy. In general, combination therapy is typically preferred over alternation therapy because it induces multiple simultaneous stresses on the virus.

Nonlimiting examples of antiviral agents that can be used in combination with the compounds disclosed herein include:

(1) an interferon and/or ribavirin (Battaglia, A. M. et al., *Ann. Pharmacother.* 34:487-494, 2000); Berenguer, M. et al. *Antivir. Ther.* 3(Suppl. 3):125-136, 1998);

(2) Substrate-based NS3 protease inhibitors (Attwood et al., *Antiviral peptide derivatives*, PCT WO 98/22496, 1998; Attwood et al., *Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy* 10:259-273, 1999; Attwood et al., Preparation and use of amino acid derivatives as anti-viral agents, German Patent Publication DE 19914474; Tung et al. Inhibitors of serine proteases, particularly hepatitis C virus NS3 protease, PCT WO 98/17679), including alphaketoamides and hydrazinoneureas, and inhibitors that terminate in an electrophile such as a boronic acid or phosphonate. Llinas-Brunet et al, Hepatitis C inhibitor peptide analogues, PCT WO 99/07734.

(3) Non-substrate-based inhibitors such as 2,4,6-trihydroxy-3-nitro-benzamide derivatives(Sudo K. et al., *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 238: 643-647, 1997; Sudo K. et al. *Antiviral Chemistry and Chemotherapy* 9:186, 1998), including RD3-4082 and RD3-4078, the former substituted on the amide with a 14 carbon chain and the latter processing a para-phenoxyphenyl group;

(4) Thiazolidine derivatives which show relevant inhibition in a reverse-phase HPLC assay with an NS3/4A fusion pro-

tein and NSSA/5B substrate (Sudo K. et al., *Antiviral Research* 32:9-18, 1996), especially compound RD-1-6250, possessing a fused cinnamoyl moiety substituted with a long alkyl chain, RD4 6205 and RD4 6193;

(5) Thiazolidines and benzanilides identified in Kakiuchi N. et al. *J. EBS Letters* 421:217-220; Takeshita N. et al. *Analytical Biochemistry* 247:242-246, 1997;

(6) A phenanthrenequinone possessing activity against HCV protease in a SDS-PAGE and autoradiography assay isolated from the fermentation culture broth of *Streptomyces* sp., Sch 68631 (Chu M. et al., *Tetrahedron Letters* 37:7229-7232, 1996), and Sch 351633, isolated from the fungus *Penicillium griseofulvum*, which demonstrates activity in a scintillation proximity assay (Chu M. et al., *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 9:1949-1952);

(7) Selective NS3 inhibitors based on the macromolecule elgin c, isolated from leech (Qasim M. A. et al., *Biochemistry* 36:1598-1607, 1997);

(8) HCV helicase inhibitors (Diana G. D. et al., Compounds, compositions and methods for treatment of hepatitis C, U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,358; Diana G. D. et al., Piperidine derivatives, pharmaceutical compositions thereof and their use in the treatment of hepatitis C, PCT WO 97/36554);

(9) HCV polymerase inhibitors such as nucleotide analogues, gliotoxin (Ferrari R. et al. *Journal of Virology* 73:1649-1654, 1999), and the natural product cerulenin (Lohmann V. et al., *Virology* 249:108-118, 1998);

(10) Antisense phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides (S-ODN) complementary to sequence stretches in the 5' non-coding region (NCR) of the HCV (Alt M. et al., *Hepatology* 22:707-717, 1995), or nucleotides 326-348 comprising the 3' end of the NCR and nucleotides 371-388 located in the core coding region of the HCV RNA (Alt M. et al., *Archives of Virology* 142:589-599, 1997; Galderisi U. et al., *Journal of Cellular Physiology* 181:251-257, 1999);

(11) Inhibitors of IRES-dependent translation (Ikeda N et al., Agent for the prevention and treatment of hepatitis C, Japanese Patent Publication JP-08268890; Kai Y. et al., Prevention and treatment of viral diseases, Japanese Patent Publication JP-10101591);

(12) Nuclease-resistant ribozymes. (Maccjak D. J. et al., *Hepatology* 30 abstract 995, 1999); and

(13) Other miscellaneous compounds including 1-amino-alkylcyclohexanes (U.S. Pat. No. 6,034,134 to Gold et al.), alkyl lipids (U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,757 to Chojkier et al.), vitamin E and other antioxidants (U.S. Pat. No. 5,922,757 to Chojkier et al.), squalene, amantadine, bile acids (U.S. Pat. No. 5,846,964 to Ozeki et al.), N(phosphonoacetyl)-L-aspartic acid, (U.S. Pat. No. 5,830,905 to Diana et al.), benzenedicarboxamides (U.S. Pat. No. 5,633,388 to Diana et al.), polyadenylic acid derivatives (U.S. Pat. No. 5,496,546 to Wang et al.), 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (U.S. Pat. No. 5,026,687 to Yarchoan et al.), and benzimidazoles (U.S. Pat. No. 5,891,874 to Colacino et al.).

V. Pharmaceutical Compositions

Hosts, including humans, infected with HCV, or a gene fragment thereof, can be treated by administering to the patient an effective amount of the active compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable prodrug or salt thereof in the presence of a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent. The active materials can be administered by any appropriate route, for example, orally, parenterally, intravenously, intradermally, subcutaneously, or topically, in liquid or solid form.

A preferred dose of the compound for HCV will be in the range from about 1 to 50 mg/kg, preferably 1 to 20 mg/kg, of body weight per day, more generally 0.1 to about 100 mg per

kilogram body weight of the recipient per day. The effective dosage range of the pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs can be calculated based on the weight of the parent nucleoside to be delivered. If the salt or prodrug exhibits activity in itself, the effective dosage can be estimated as above using the weight of the salt or prodrug, or by other means known to those skilled in the art.

The compound is conveniently administered in unit suitable dosage form, including but not limited to one containing 7 to 3000 mg, preferably 70 to 1400 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form. A oral dosage of 50-1000 mg is usually convenient.

Ideally the active ingredient should be administered to achieve peak plasma concentrations of the active compound of from about 0.2 to 70 μ M, preferably about 1.0 to 10 μ M. This may be achieved, for example, by the intravenous injection of a 0.1 to 5% solution of the active ingredient, optionally in saline, or administered as a bolus of the active ingredient.

The concentration of active compound in the drug composition will depend on absorption, inactivation and excretion rates of the drug as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art. It is to be noted that dosage values will also vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that the concentration ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or practice of the claimed composition. The active ingredient may be administered at once, or may be divided into a number of smaller doses to be administered at varying intervals of time.

A preferred mode of administration of the active compound is oral. Oral compositions will generally include an inert diluent or an edible carrier. They may be enclosed in gelatin capsules or compressed into tablets. For the purpose of oral therapeutic administration, the active compound can be incorporated with excipients and used in the form of tablets, troches, or capsules. Pharmaceutically compatible binding agents, and/or adjuvant materials can be included as part of the composition.

The tablets, pills, capsules, troches and the like can contain any of the following ingredients, or compounds of a similar nature: a binder such as microcrystalline cellulose, gum tragacanth or gelatin; an excipient such as starch or lactose, a disintegrating agent such as alginic acid, Primogel, or corn starch; a lubricant such as magnesium stearate or Sterotes; a glidant such as colloidal silicon dioxide; a sweetening agent such as sucrose or saccharin; or a flavoring agent such as peppermint, methyl salicylate, or orange flavoring. When the dosage unit form is a capsule, it can contain, in addition to material of the above type, a liquid carrier such as a fatty oil. In addition, dosage unit forms can contain various other materials which modify the physical form of the dosage unit, for example, coatings of sugar, shellac, or other enteric agents.

The compound can be administered as a component of an elixir, suspension, syrup, wafer, chewing gum or the like. A syrup may contain, in addition to the active compounds, sucrose as a sweetening agent and certain preservatives, dyes and colorings and flavors.

The compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable prodrug or salts thereof can also be mixed with other active materials that do not impair the desired action, or with materials that supplement the desired action, such as antibiotics, antifungals, anti-inflammatories, or other antivirals, including other nucleoside compounds. Solutions or suspensions used for

parenteral, intradermal, subcutaneous, or topical application can include the following components: a sterile diluent such as water for injection, saline solution, fixed oils, polyethylene glycols, glycerine, propylene glycol or other synthetic solvents; antibacterial agents such as benzyl alcohol or methyl parabens; antioxidants such as ascorbic acid or sodium bisulfite; chelating agents such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; buffers such as acetates, citrates or phosphates and agents for the adjustment of tonicity such as sodium chloride or dextrose. The parental preparation can be enclosed in ampoules, disposable syringes or multiple dose vials made of glass or plastic.

If administered intravenously, preferred carriers are physiological saline or phosphate buffered saline (PBS).

In a preferred embodiment, the active compounds are prepared with carriers that will protect the compound against rapid elimination from the body, such as a controlled release formulation, including implants and microencapsulated delivery systems. Biodegradable, biocompatible polymers can be used, such as ethylene vinyl acetate, polyanhydrides, polyglycolic acid, collagen, polyorthoesters and polylactic acid. Methods for preparation of such formulations will be apparent to those skilled in the art. The materials can also be obtained commercially from Alza Corporation.

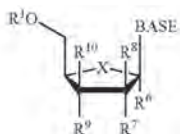
Liposomal suspensions (including liposomes targeted to infected cells with monoclonal antibodies to viral antigens) are also preferred as pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. These may be prepared according to methods known to those skilled in the art, for example, as described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,522,811 (which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety). For example, liposome formulations may be prepared by dissolving appropriate lipid(s) (such as stearyl phosphatidyl ethanolamine, stearyl phosphatidyl choline, arachadyl phosphatidyl choline, and cholesterol) in an inorganic solvent that is then evaporated, leaving behind a thin film of dried lipid on the surface of the container. An aqueous solution of the active compound or its monophosphate, diphosphate, and/or triphosphate derivatives is then introduced into the container. The container is then swirled by hand to free lipid material from the sides of the container and to disperse lipid aggregates, thereby forming the liposomal suspension.

VI. Processes for the Preparation of Active Compounds

The nucleosides of the present invention can be synthesized by any means known in the art. In particular, the synthesis of the present nucleosides can be achieved by either alkylating the appropriately modified sugar, followed by glycosylation or glycosylation followed by alkylation of the nucleoside. The following non-limiting embodiments illustrate some general methodology to obtain the nucleosides of the present invention.

A. General Synthesis of 1'-C-Branched Nucleosides

1'-C-Branched ribonucleosides of the following structure:



wherein BASE is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R^7 and R^9 are independently hydrogen, OR², hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R^8 and R^{10} are independently H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; alternatively, R^7 and R^9 , R^7 and R^{10} , R^8 and R^9 , or R^8 and R^{10} can come together to form a pi bond;

R^1 and R^2 are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 or R^2 is independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is an alkyl, chloro-, bromo-, fluoro-, or iodo-alkyl (i.e. CF₃), alkenyl, or alkynyl (i.e. allyl); and

X is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂.

can be prepared by one of the following general methods.

1) Modification from the Lactone

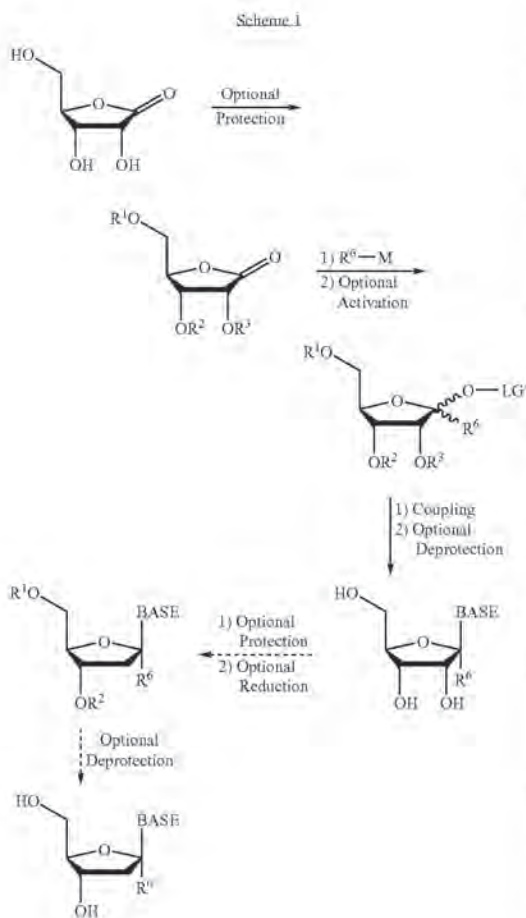
The key starting material for this process is an appropriately substituted lactone. The lactone can be purchased or can be prepared by any known means including standard epimerization, substitution and cyclization techniques. The lactone can be optionally protected with a suitable protecting group, preferably with an acyl or silyl group, by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991. The protected lactone can then be coupled with a suitable coupling agent, such as an organometallic carbon nucleophile, such as a Grignard reagent, an organolithium, lithium dialkylcopper or R⁶—SiMe₃ in TBAF with the appropriate non-protic solvent at a suitable temperature, to give the 1'-alkylated sugar.

The optionally activated sugar can then be coupled to the BASE by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Townsend *Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, Plenum Press, 1994. For example, an acylated sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with a Lewis acid, such as tin tetrachloride, titanium tetrachloride or trimethylsilyltriflate in the appropriate solvent at a suitable temperature.

Subsequently, the nucleoside can be deprotected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

In a particular embodiment, the 1'-C-branched ribonucleoside is desired. The synthesis of a ribonucleoside is shown in Scheme 1. Alternatively, deoxyribo-nucleoside is desired. To obtain these nucleosides, the formed ribonucleoside can optionally be protected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, and then the 2'-OH can be reduced with a suitable reducing agent. Optionally, the 2'-hydroxyl can be activated to facilitate reduction; i.e. via the Barton reduction.

45



46

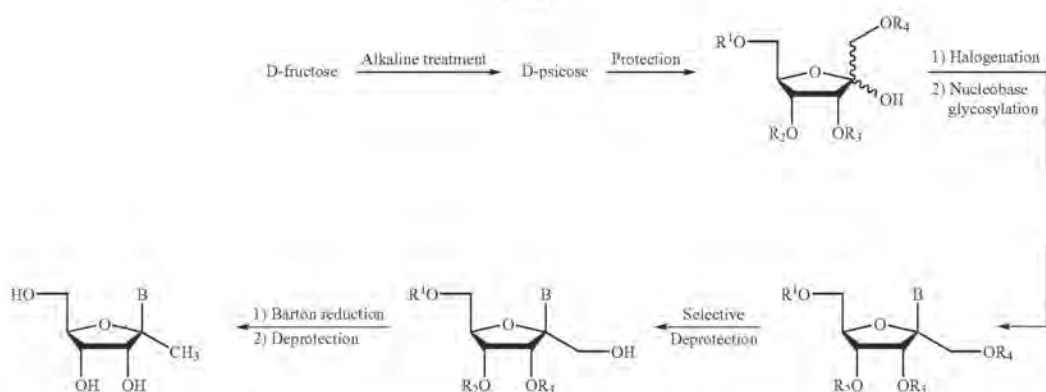
be prepared by any known means including standard epimerization, such as alkaline treatment, substitution and coupling techniques. The hexose can be selectively protected to give the appropriate hexa-furanose, as taught by Townsend *Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, Plenum Press, 1994.

The 1'-hydroxyl can be optionally activated to a suitable leaving group such as an acyl group or a chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo via acylation or halogenation, respectively. The optionally activated sugar can then be coupled to the BASE by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Townsend *Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, Plenum Press, 1994. For example, an acylated sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with a Lewis acid, such as tin tetrachloride, titanium tetrachloride or trimethylsilyltriflate in the appropriate solvent at a suitable temperature. Alternatively, a halo-sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with the presence of trimethylsilyltriflate.

The 1'-CH₂-OH, if protected, can be selectively deprotected by methods well known in the art. The resultant primary hydroxyl can be functionalized to yield various C-branched nucleosides. For example, the primary hydroxyl can be reduced to give the methyl, using a suitable reducing agent. Alternatively, the hydroxyl can be activated prior to reduction to facilitate the reaction; i.e. via the Barton reduction. In an alternate embodiment, the primary hydroxyl can be oxidized to the aldehyde, then coupled with a carbon nucleophile, such as a Grignard reagent, an organolithium, lithium dialkylcopper or R⁶-SiMe₃ in TBAF with the appropriate non-protic solvent at a suitable temperature.

In a particular embodiment, the 1'-C-branched ribonucleoside is desired. The synthesis of a ribonucleoside is shown in Scheme 2. Alternatively, deoxyribo-nucleoside is desired. To obtain these nucleosides, the formed ribonucleoside can optionally be protected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, and then the 2'-OH can be reduced with a suitable reducing agent. Optionally, the 2'-hydroxyl can be activated to facilitate reduction; i.e. via the Barton reduction.

Scheme 2

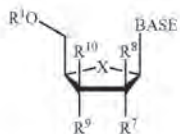


2. Alternative Method for the Preparation of 1'-C-branched Nucleosides

The key starting material for this process is an appropriately substituted hexose. The hexose can be purchased or can

In addition, the L-enantiomers corresponding to the compounds of the invention can be prepared following the same general methods (1 or 2), beginning with the corresponding L-sugar or nucleoside L-enantiomer as starting material.

B. General Synthesis of 2'-C-Branched Nucleosides
2'-C-Branched ribonucleosides of the following structure:



wherein **BASE** is a purine or **pyrimidine** base as defined herein;

R⁷ and **R⁹** are independently hydrogen, OR², **hydroxy**, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), **chlorine, bromine, iodine**, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂; **R¹⁰ is H**, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine; alternatively, **R⁷** and **R⁹**, or **R⁷** and **R¹⁰** can come together to form a pi bond;

R¹ and **R²** are independently H; phosphate (including monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein **R¹** or **R²** is independently H or phosphate;

R⁶ is an alkyl, chloro-, bromo-, fluoro-, iodo-alkyl (i.e. CF₃), alkenyl, or alkynyl (i.e. allyl); and **X** is O, S, SO₂ or CH₂

can be prepared by one of the following general methods.

1. Glycosylation of the Nucleobase with an Appropriately Modified Sugar

The key starting material for this process is an appropriately substituted sugar with a 2'-OH and 2'-H, with the appropriate leaving group (LG), for example an acyl group or a chloro, bromo, fluoro or iodo. The sugar can be purchased or can be prepared by any known means including standard epimerization, substitution, oxidation and reduction techniques. The substituted sugar can then be oxidized with the appropriate oxidizing agent in a compatible solvent at a suitable temperature to yield the 2'-modified sugar. Possible oxidizing agents are Jones reagent (a mixture of chromic acid and sulfuric acid), Collins's reagent (dipyridine Cr(VI) oxide), Corey's reagent (pyridinium chlorochromate), pyridinium dichromate, acid dichromate, potassium permanganate, MnO₂, ruthenium tetroxide, phase transfer catalysts such as chromic acid or permanganate supported on a polymer, Cl₂-pyridine, H₂O₂-ammonium molybdate, NaBrO₂-CAN, NaOCl in HOAc, copper chromite, copper oxide, Raney nickel, palladium acetate, Meerwin-Pondorf-Verley reagent (aluminum t-butoxide with another ketone) and N-bromosuccinimide.

Then coupling of an organometallic carbon nucleophile, such as a Grignard reagent, an organolithium, lithium dialkylcopper or R⁶-SiMe₃ in TBAF with the ketone with the appropriate non-protic solvent at a suitable temperature, yields the 2'-alkylated sugar. The alkylated sugar can be optionally protected with a suitable protecting group, preferably with an

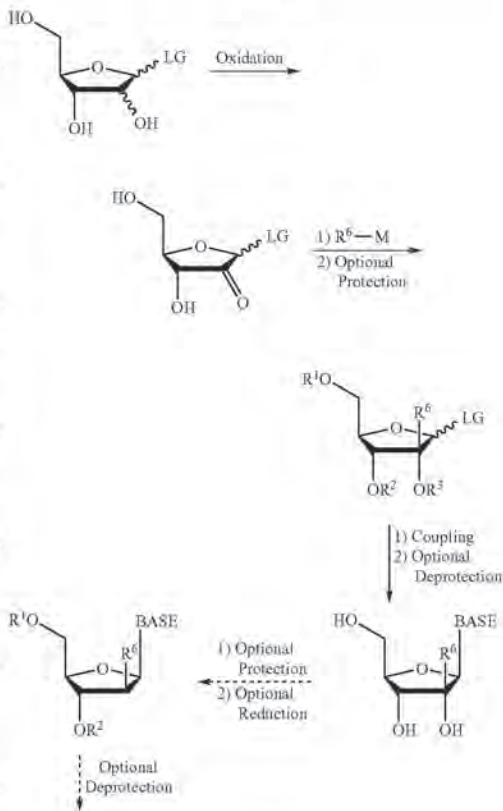
acyl or silyl group, by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

The optionally protected sugar can then be coupled to the BASE by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Townsend *Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, Plenum Press, 1994. For example, an acylated sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with a Lewis acid, such as tin tetrachloride, titanium tetrachloride or trimethylsilyltriflate in the appropriate solvent at a suitable temperature. Alternatively, a halo-sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with the presence of trimethylsilyltriflate.

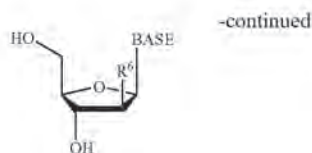
Subsequently, the nucleoside can be deprotected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

In a particular embodiment, the 2'-C-branched ribonucleoside is desired. The synthesis of a ribonucleoside is shown in Scheme 3. Alternatively, deoxyribo-nucleoside is desired. To obtain these nucleosides, the formed ribonucleoside can optionally be protected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, and then the 2'-OH can be reduced with a suitable reducing agent. Optionally, the 2'-hydroxyl can be activated to facilitate reduction; i.e. via the Barton reduction.

Scheme 3



49



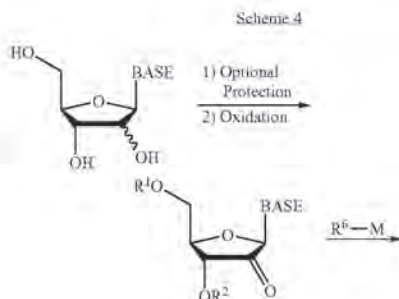
2. Modification of a Preformed Nucleoside

The key starting material for this process is an appropriately substituted nucleoside with a 2'-OH and 2'-H. The nucleoside can be purchased or can be prepared by any known means including standard coupling techniques. The nucleoside can be optionally protected with suitable protecting groups, preferably with acyl or silyl groups, by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

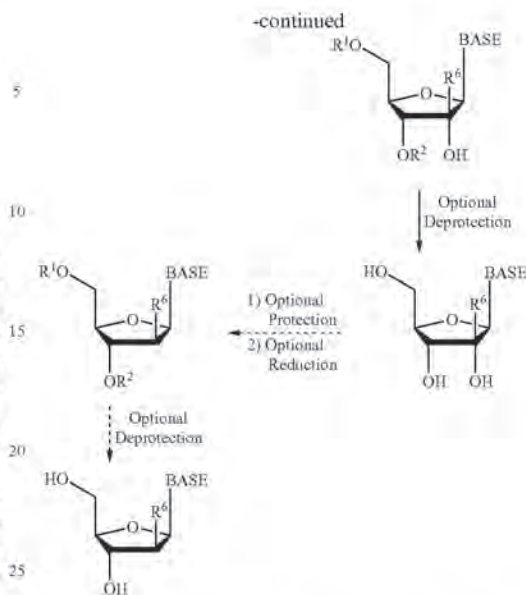
The appropriately protected nucleoside can then be oxidized with the appropriate oxidizing agent in a compatible solvent at a suitable temperature to yield the 2'-modified sugar. Possible oxidizing agents are Jones reagent (a mixture of chromic acid and sulfuric acid), Collins's reagent (dipyridine Cr(VI) oxide, Corey's reagent (pyridinium chlorochromate), pyridinium dichromate, acid dichromate, potassium permanganate, MnO₂, ruthenium tetroxide, phase transfer catalysts such as chromic acid or permanganate supported on a polymer, Cl₂-pyridine, H₂O₂-ammonium molybdate, NaBrO₂-CAN, NaOCl in HOAc, copper chromite, copper oxide, Raney nickel, palladium acetate, Meerwin-Pondorf-Verley reagent (aluminum t-butoxide with another ketone) and N-bromosuccinimide.

Subsequently, the nucleoside can be deprotected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

In a particular embodiment, the 2'-C-branched ribonucleoside is desired. The synthesis of a ribonucleoside is shown in Scheme 4. Alternatively, deoxyribo-nucleoside is desired. To obtain these nucleosides, the formed ribonucleoside can optionally be protected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, and then the 2'-OH can be reduced with a suitable reducing agent. Optionally, the 2'-hydroxyl can be activated to facilitate reduction; i.e. via the Barton reduction.



50

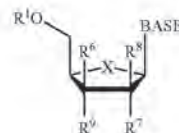


In another embodiment of the invention, the L-enantiomers are desired.

Therefore, the L-enantiomers can be corresponding to the compounds of the invention can be prepared following the same foregoing general methods, beginning with the corresponding L-sugar or nucleoside L-enantiomer as starting material.

C. General Synthesis of 3'-C-Branched Nucleosides

3'-C-Branched ribonucleosides of the following structure:



wherein BASE is a purine or pyrimidine base as defined herein;

R⁷ and R⁹ are independently hydrogen, OR², hydroxy, alkyl (including lower alkyl), azido, cyano, alkenyl, alkynyl, Br-vinyl, —C(O)O(alkyl), —C(O)O(lower alkyl), —O(acyl), —O(lower acyl), —O(alkyl), —O(lower alkyl), —O(alkenyl), chlorine, bromine, iodine, NO₂, NH₂, —NH(lower alkyl), —NH(acyl), —N(lower alkyl)₂, —N(acyl)₂;

R⁸ is H, alkyl (including lower alkyl), chlorine, bromine or iodine;

alternatively, R⁷ and R⁹, or R⁸ and R⁹ can come together to form a pi bond;

R¹ and R² are independently H; phosphate (including mono-phosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, or a stabilized phosphate prodrug); acyl (including lower acyl); alkyl (including lower alkyl); sulfonate ester including alkyl or arylalkyl sulfonyl including methanesulfonyl and benzyl, wherein the phenyl group is optionally substituted with one or more substituents as described in the definition of aryl

51

given herein; a lipid, including a phospholipid; an amino acid; a carbohydrate; a peptide; a cholesterol; or other pharmaceutically acceptable leaving group which when administered in vivo is capable of providing a compound wherein R^1 or R^2 is independently H or phosphate;

R^6 is an alkyl, chloro-, fluoro-, bromo-, iodo-alkyl (i.e. CF_3), alkenyl, or alkynyl (i.e. allyl); and

X is O, S, SO_2 or CH_2 .

can be prepared by one of the following general methods.

1. Glycosylation of the Nucleobase with an Appropriately Modified Sugar

The key starting material for this process is an appropriately substituted sugar with a 3'-OH and 3'-H, with the appropriate leaving group (LG), for example an acyl group or a chloro, bromo, fluoro, iodo. The sugar can be purchased or can be prepared by any known means including standard epimerization, substitution, oxidation and reduction techniques. The substituted sugar can then be oxidized with the appropriate oxidizing agent in a compatible solvent at a suitable temperature to yield the 3'-modified sugar. Possible oxidizing agents are Jones reagent (a mixture of chromic acid and sulfuric acid), Collins's reagent (dipyridine $Cr(VI)$ oxide), Corey's reagent (pyridinium chlorochromate), pyridinium dichromate, acid dichromate, potassium permanganate, MnO_2 , ruthenium tetroxide, phase transfer catalysts such as chromic acid or permanganate supported on a polymer, Cl_2 -pyridine, H_2O_2 -ammonium molybdate, $NaBrO_2$ -CAN, $NaOCl$ in HOAc, copper chromite, copper oxide, Raney nickel, palladium acetate, Meerwin-Pondorf-Verley reagent (aluminum t-butoxide with another ketone) and N-bromosuccinimide.

Then coupling of an organometallic carbon nucleophile, such as a Grignard reagent, an organolithium, lithium dialkylcopper or R^6-SiMe_3 in TBAF with the ketone with the appropriate non-protic solvent at a suitable temperature, yields the 3'-C-branched sugar. The 3'-C-branched sugar can be optionally protected with a suitable protecting group, preferably with an acyl or silyl group, by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

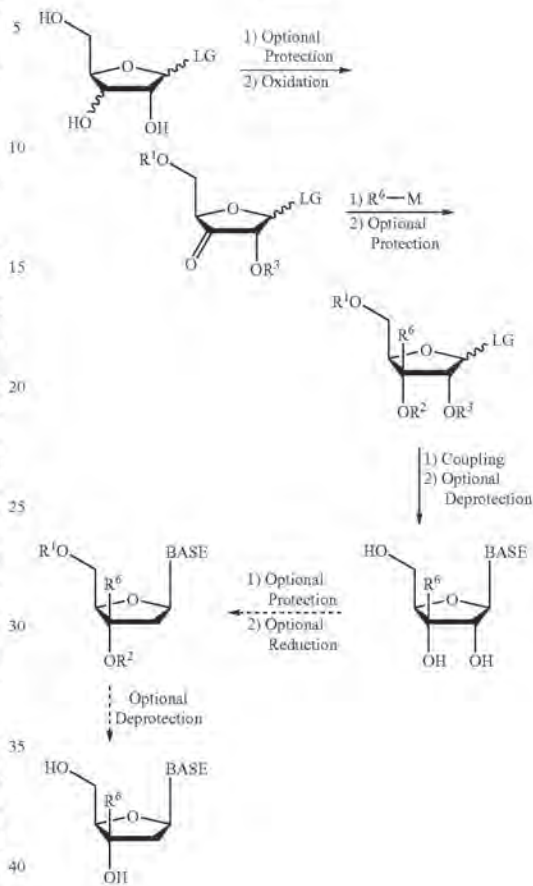
The optionally protected sugar can then be coupled to the BASE by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Townsend *Chemistry of Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, Plenum Press, 1994. For example, an acylated sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with a Lewis acid, such as tin tetrachloride, titanium tetrachloride or trimethylsilyltriflate in the appropriate solvent at a suitable temperature. Alternatively, a halo-sugar can be coupled to a silylated base with the presence of trimethylsilyltriflate.

Subsequently, the nucleoside can be deprotected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

In a particular embodiment, the 3'-C-branched ribonucleoside is desired. The synthesis of a ribonucleoside is shown in Scheme 5. Alternatively, deoxyribo-nucleoside is desired. To obtain these nucleosides, the formed ribonucleoside can optionally be protected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, and then the 2'-OH can be reduced with a suitable reducing agent. Optionally, the 2'-hydroxyl can be activated to facilitate reduction; i.e. via the Barton reduction.

52

Scheme 5



2. Modification of a Preformed Nucleoside

The key starting material for this process is an appropriately substituted nucleoside with a 3'-OH and 3'-H. The nucleoside can be purchased or can be prepared by any known means including standard coupling techniques. The nucleoside can be optionally protected with suitable protecting groups, preferably with acyl or silyl groups, by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

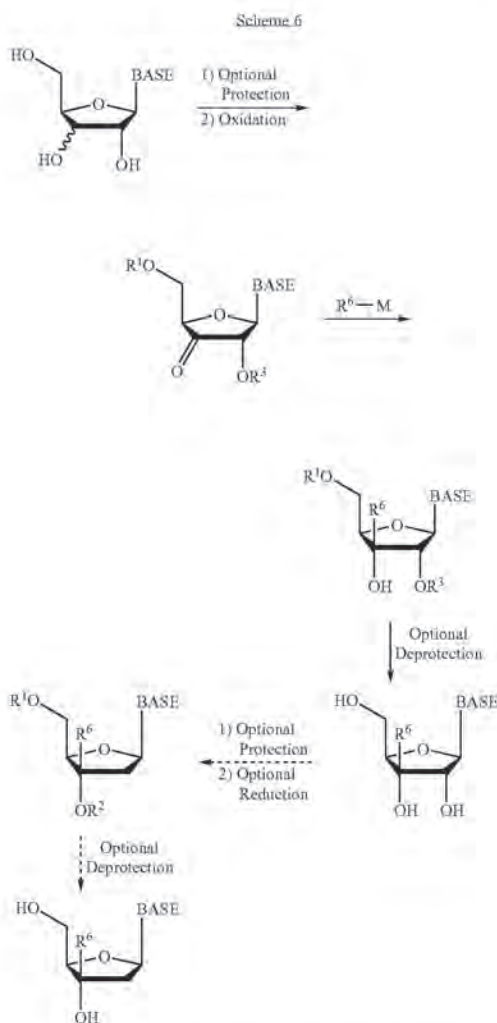
The appropriately protected nucleoside can then be oxidized with the appropriate oxidizing agent in a compatible solvent at a suitable temperature to yield the 2'-modified sugar. Possible oxidizing agents are Jones reagent (a mixture of chromic acid and sulfuric acid), Collins's reagent (dipyridine $Cr(VI)$ oxide), Corey's reagent (pyridinium chlorochromate), pyridinium dichromate, acid dichromate, potassium permanganate, MnO_2 , ruthenium tetroxide, phase transfer catalysts such as chromic acid or permanganate supported on a polymer, Cl_2 -pyridine, H_2O_2 -ammonium molybdate, $NaBrO_2$ -CAN, $NaOCl$ in HOAc, copper chromite, copper

53

oxide, Raney nickel, palladium acetate, Meerwin-Pondorf-Verley reagent (aluminum t-butoxide with another ketone) and N-bromosuccinimide.

Subsequently, the nucleoside can be deprotected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

In a particular embodiment, the 3'-C-branched ribonucleoside is desired. The synthesis of a ribonucleoside is shown in Scheme 6. Alternatively, deoxyribo-nucleoside is desired. To obtain these nucleosides, the formed ribonucleoside can optionally be protected by methods well known to those skilled in the art, as taught by Greene et al. *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, and then the 2'-OH can be reduced with a suitable reducing agent. Optionally, the 2'-hydroxyl can be activated to facilitate reduction; i.e. via the Barton reduction.



In another embodiment of the invention, the L-enantiomers are desired. Therefore, the L-enantiomers can be corresponding to the compounds of the invention can be prepared fol-

54

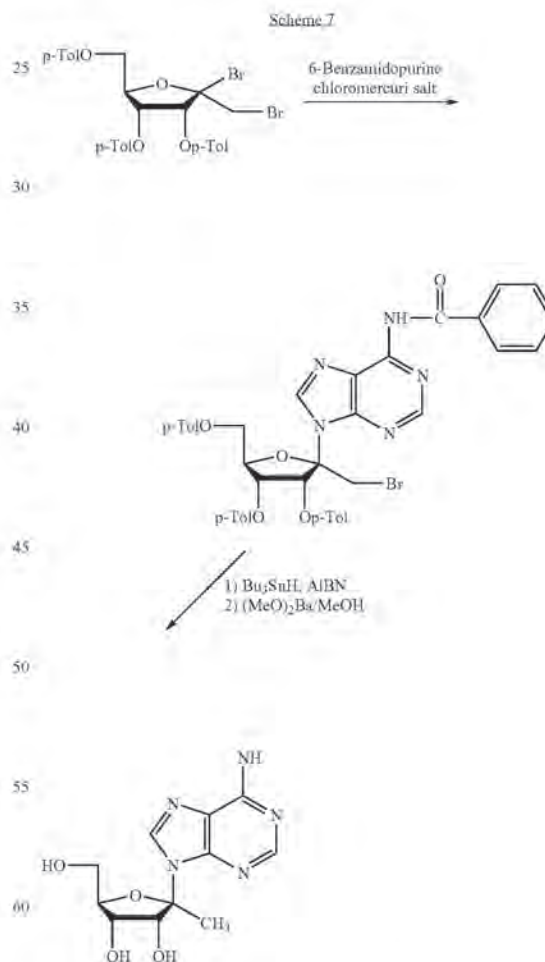
lowing the same foregoing general methods, beginning with the corresponding L-sugar or nucleoside L-enantiomer as starting material.

EXAMPLES

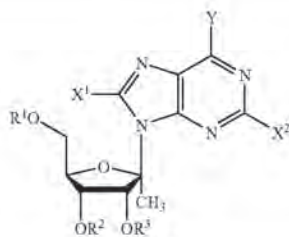
Example 1

Preparation of 1'-C-methylriboadenine via 6-amino-9-(1-deoxy-β-D-psicofuranosyl)purine

As another alternative method of preparation, the title compound could also be prepared according to a published procedure (J. Farkas, and F. Sorm, "Nucleic acid components and their analogues. XCIV. Synthesis of 6-amino-9-(1-deoxy-β-D-psicofuranosyl)purine", *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* 1967, 32, 2663-2667. J. Farkas", *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* 1966, 31, 1535) (Scheme 7).



In a similar manner, but using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases, the following nucleosides of Formula 1 are prepared.

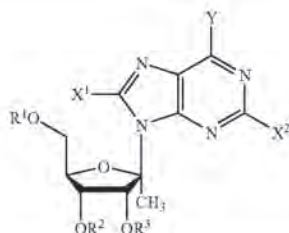


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	H	H	H
H	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	H	OH
H	H	H	H	H	OMe
H	H	H	H	H	OEt
H	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	H	SH
H	H	H	H	H	SMe
H	H	H	H	H	SEt
H	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	F
H	H	H	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	H	H	Br
H	H	H	H	H	I
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	F
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	I
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	F
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	I
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe

-continued

(I)

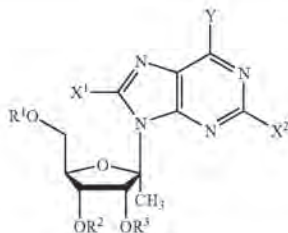


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OBt
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	F
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	I
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	OH
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	F
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	F
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	F
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	F	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	H	OH
H	H	H	F	H	F
H	H	H	F	H	Cl
H	H	H	Cl	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	H	OH
H	H	H	Cl	H	F
H	H	H	Cl	H	Cl
H	H	H	Br	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	H	OH
H	H	H	Br	H	F
H	H	H	Br	H	Cl
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	OH
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	F
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	Cl
H	H	H	SH	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	H	OH
H	H	H	SH	H	F
H	H	H	SH	H	Cl
acetyl	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	H	F
acetyl	H	H	H	H	Cl
acetyl	H	H	F	H	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	H	F
acetyl	H	H	F	H	Cl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂

-continued

(I)

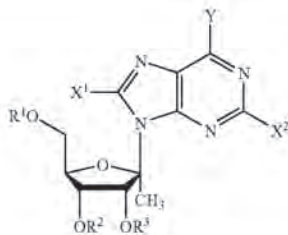


wherein:

R¹	R²	R³	X¹	X²	Y
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	H
H	H	H	H	NH₂	NH₂
H	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	OH
H	H	H	H	NH₂	OMe
H	H	H	H	NH₂	OEt
H	H	H	H	NH₂	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	SH
H	H	H	H	NH₂	SMe
H	H	H	H	NH₂	SEt
H	H	H	H	NH₂	S-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	F
H	H	H	H	NH₂	Cl
H	H	H	H	NH₂	Br
H	H	H	H	NH₂	I
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	NH₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	F
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	Cl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	Br
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	I
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH₂	NH₂

-continued

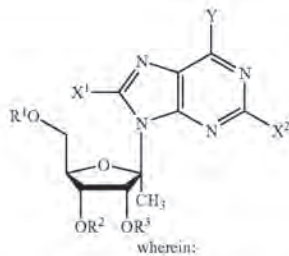
(I)



R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl

-continued

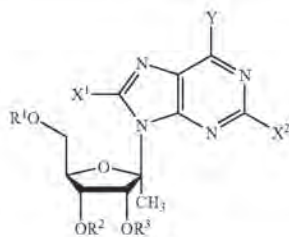
(I)



R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	Cl
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	F
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	Cl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	H	Cl	H
H	H	H	H	Cl	H
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
H	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
H	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	SH
H	H	H	H	Cl	SMe

-continued

(I)

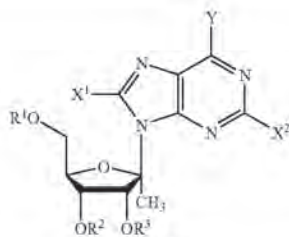


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
H	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	F	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Br	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	Cl	OH

-continued

(II)



wherein:

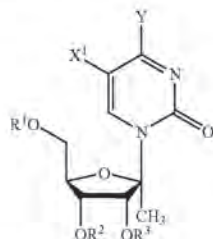
R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl	OH
H	H	H	SH	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	Cl	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Br	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	Br	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Br	OH

45

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula IV are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.

-continued

(IV)



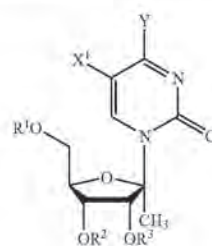
wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
H	H	H	H	H
H	H	H	H	NH ₂

50

(IV)

55



wherein:

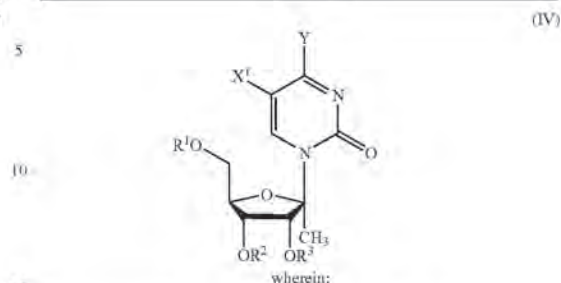
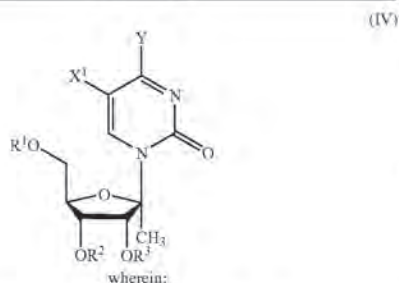
R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl

60

65

-continued

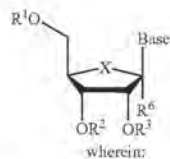
-continued



R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	OH
H	H	H	H	OMe
H	H	H	H	OEt
H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	SH
H	H	H	H	SMe
H	H	H	H	SEt
H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂

	R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
	diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
20	diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	OH
	triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂
	triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	OH
	H	H	H	F	NH ₂
	H	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
25	H	H	H	F	OH
	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	Cl	OH
30	H	H	H	Br	NH ₂
	H	H	H	Br	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	Br	OH
	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
35	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
	H	H	H	SH	NH ₂
	H	H	H	SH	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	SH	OH
	acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂
40	acetyl	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	acetyl	H	H	H	OH
	acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂
	acetyl	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
45	acetyl	H	H	F	OH
	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
50	acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
55	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
60	triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH

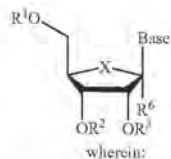
65 Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula VII are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



(VII)

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine

-continued

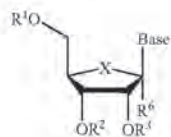


(VII)

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine

-continued

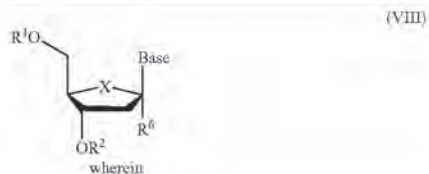
(VII)



wherein:

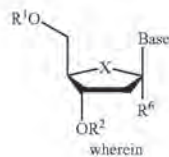
R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2-fluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	8-fluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2-fluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	8-fluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	adenine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	guanine

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula VIII are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



R ¹	R ²	R ⁶	X	Base
H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil

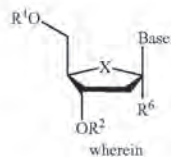
-continued



(VIII)

R ¹	R ²	R ⁶	X	Base
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine

-continued

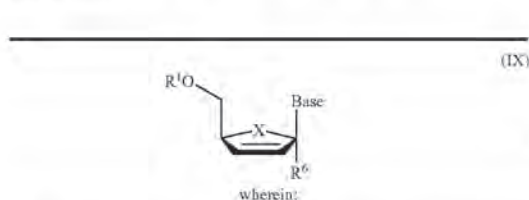


(VIII)

R ¹	R ²	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	adenine
acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	guanine

83

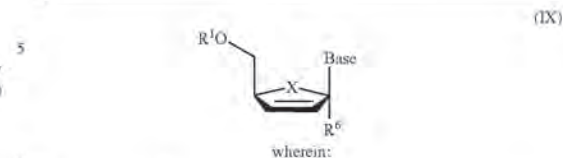
Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula IX are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



R ¹	R ⁶	X	Base
H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil

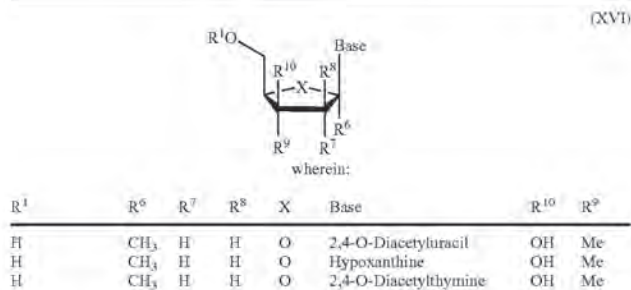
84

-continued



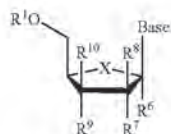
R ¹	R ⁶	X	Base
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XVI are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	R ⁸	X	Base	R ¹⁰	R ⁹
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me

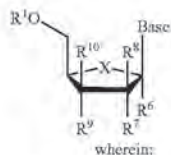
-continued



wherein:

R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	R ⁸	X	Base	R ¹⁰	R ⁹
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	Thymine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	Cytosine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	Uracil	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	Thymine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	Cytosine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	Uracil	OH	Me
H	CH ₃	H	H	S	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Thymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Uracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Thymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Uracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Thymine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Cytosine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Uracil	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Thymine	OH	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Cytosine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Thymine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Cytosine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me

-continued

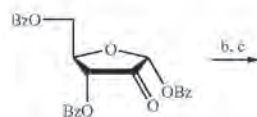
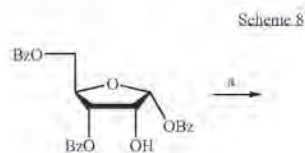


R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	R ⁸	X	Base	R ¹⁰	R ⁹
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	Uracil	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Thymine	OH	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	H	S	Cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	Thymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	Cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	Uracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	Hypoxanthine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	Thymine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	Cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	Uracil	OH	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	H	S	5-Fluorouracil	OH	Me
acetyl	CH ₃	H	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	H	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	OH	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	OH	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br

Example 2

Preparation of 2'-C-methylriboadenine

The title compound was prepared according to a published procedure (R. E. Harry-O'kuru, J. M. Smith, and M. S. Wolfe, "A short, flexible route toward 2'-C-branched ribonucleosides", *J. Org. Chem.* 1997, 62, 1754-1759) (Scheme 8).



40

45

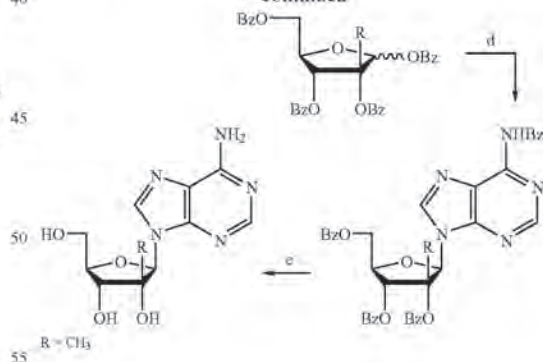
50

55

60

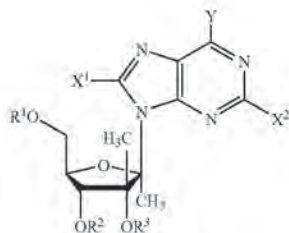
65

-continued



(a) Dess-Martin periodinane; (b) MeMgBr/TiCl₄; (c) BzCl, DMAP, Et₃N; (d) bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide, N⁶-benzoyl adenine, TMSOTf; (e) NH₃/MeOH

In a similar manner, but using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases, the following nucleosides of Formula II are prepared.

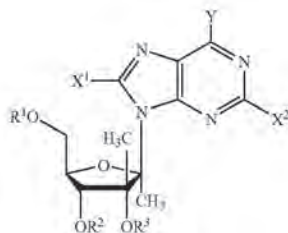


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	H	H	H
H	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	H	OH
H	H	H	H	H	OMe
H	H	H	H	H	OEt
H	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	H	SH
H	H	H	H	H	SMe
H	H	H	H	H	SEt
H	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	F
H	H	H	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	H	H	Br
H	H	H	H	H	I
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	F
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	I
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	F
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	I
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe

-continued

(II)

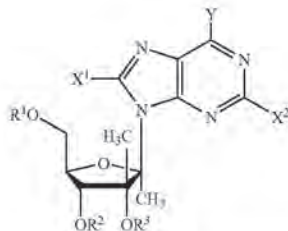


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	F
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	I
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	OH
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	F
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	F
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	F
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	F	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	H	OH
H	H	H	F	H	F
H	H	H	F	H	Cl
H	H	H	Cl	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	H	OH
H	H	H	Cl	H	F
H	H	H	Cl	H	Cl
H	H	H	Br	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	H	OH
H	H	H	Br	H	F
H	H	H	Br	H	Cl
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	OH
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	F
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	Cl
H	H	H	SH	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	H	OH
H	H	H	SH	H	F
H	H	H	SH	H	Cl
acetyl	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	H	F
acetyl	H	H	H	H	Cl
acetyl	H	H	F	H	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	H	F
acetyl	H	H	F	H	Cl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂

-continued

(II)

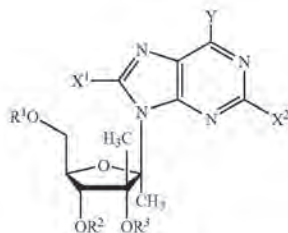


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	H
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂

-continued

(II)

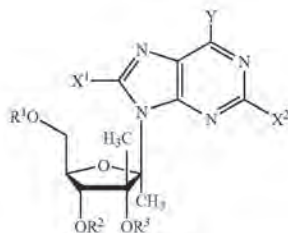


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl

-continued

(II)

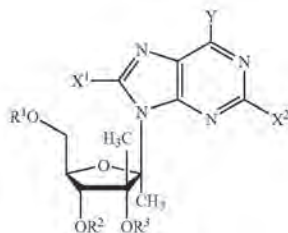


wherein:

R^1	R^2	R^3	X^1	X^2	Y
H	H	H	Br	NH_2	OH
H	H	H	Br	NH_2	F
H	H	H	Br	NH_2	Cl
H	H	H	NH_2	NH_2	NH_2
H	H	H	NH_2	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH_2	NH_2	OH
H	H	H	NH_2	NH_2	F
H	H	H	NH_2	NH_2	Cl
H	H	H	SH	NH_2	NH_2
H	H	H	SH	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	NH_2	OH
H	H	H	SH	NH_2	F
H	H	H	SH	NH_2	Cl
acetyl	H	H	H	NH_2	NH_2
acetyl	H	H	H	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	NH_2	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	NH_2	F
acetyl	H	H	H	NH_2	Cl
acetyl	H	H	F	NH_2	NH_2
acetyl	H	H	F	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	NH_2	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	NH_2	F
acetyl	H	H	F	NH_2	Cl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH_2
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	F
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	Cl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH_2
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	F
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	Cl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH_2
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	F
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	Cl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH_2
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	F
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	Cl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH_2
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	F
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH_2	Cl
H	H	H	H	Cl	H
H	H	H	H	Cl	H
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH_2
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
H	H	H	H	Cl	OEi
H	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	SH
H	H	H	H	Cl	SMe

-continued

(II)

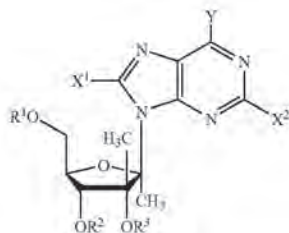


wherein:

R^1	R^2	R^3	X^1	X^2	Y
H	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
H	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	F	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Br	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	Cl	OH

-continued

(II)



wherein:

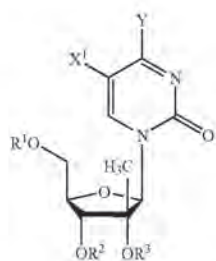
R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl	OH
H	H	H	SH	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	Cl	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Br	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	Br	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Br	OH

45

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula V are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.

-continued

(V)



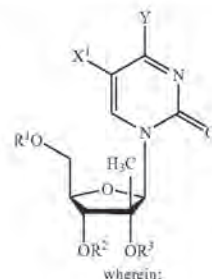
wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
H	H	H	H	H
H	H	H	H	NH ₂

50
(V)

55

60



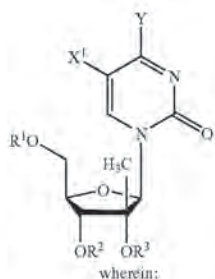
wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl

65

103

-continued

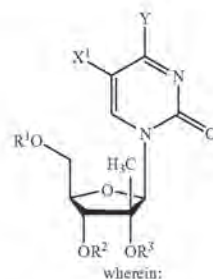


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	OH
H	H	H	H	OMe
H	H	H	H	OEt
H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	SH
H	H	H	H	SMe
H	H	H	H	SEt
H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH ₂

104

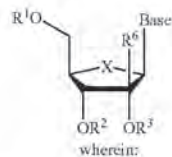
-continued



wherein:

	R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	Y
20	diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	OH
	triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH ₂
	triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
25	triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	OH
	H	H	H	F	NH ₂
	H	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	F	OH
30	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	Cl	OH
	H	H	H	Br	NH ₂
35	H	H	H	Br	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	Br	OH
	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
40	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
	H	H	H	SH	NH ₂
	H	H	H	SH	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	SH	OH
45	acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂
	acetyl	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	acetyl	H	H	H	OH
	acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂
50	acetyl	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
	acetyl	H	H	F	OH
	acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂
	acetyl	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
55	acetyl	H	H	F	OH
	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
60	acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
65	monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
70	diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
	triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂
	triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH

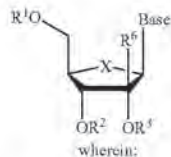
65 Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula X are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



(X)

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine

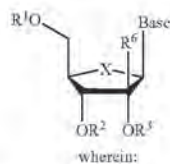
-continued



(X)

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine

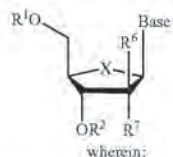
-continued



(X)

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	guanine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	adenine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	guanine

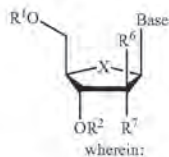
Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XI are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



(XI)

R ¹	R ²	R ⁷	R ⁶	X	Base
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine

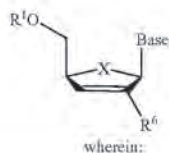
-continued



R ¹	R ²	R ⁷	R ⁶	X	Base
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	Br	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	acetyl	NO ₂	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	NO ₂	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	NO ₂	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	NO ₂	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XII are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.

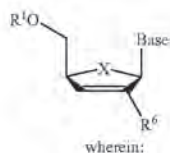
-continued



R ¹	R ⁶	X	Base
H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine

115

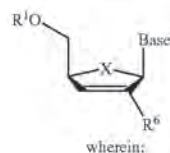
-continued



R ¹	R ⁶	X	Base
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine

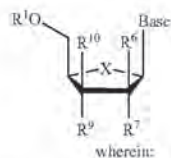
116

-continued



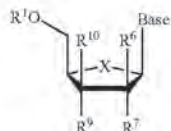
R ¹	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XVII are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	X	Base	R ⁹	R ¹⁰
H	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	Hypoxanthine	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	Thymine	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	Cytosine	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	Uracil	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	Hypoxanthine	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	Thymine	NHMe	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	Cytosine	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	Uracil	NH2	Me
H	CH ₃	H	S	5-Fluorouracil	NH2	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Hypoxanthine	NH2	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Thymine	NH2	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Cytosine	NH2	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me

-continued

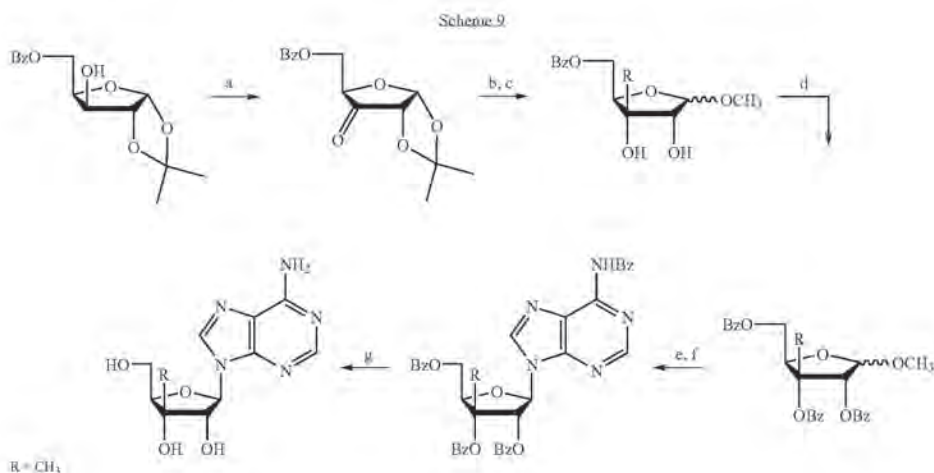


(XVII)

R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	X	Base	R ⁹	R ¹⁰
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Uracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Hypoxanthine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Uracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	H	S	5-Fluorouracil	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NHAc	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Hypoxanthine	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Uracil	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Hypoxanthine	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NHAc	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NHAc	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Hypoxanthine	NHAc	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NHAc	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NHAc	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	Uracil	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Hypoxanthine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	H	S	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	Hypoxanthine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	Uracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	O	5-Fluorouracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	Hypoxanthine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	Thymine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	Cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	Uracil	NH ₂	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	H	S	5-Fluorouracil	NH ₂	Me
acetyl	CH ₃	H	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	H	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	OH	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br

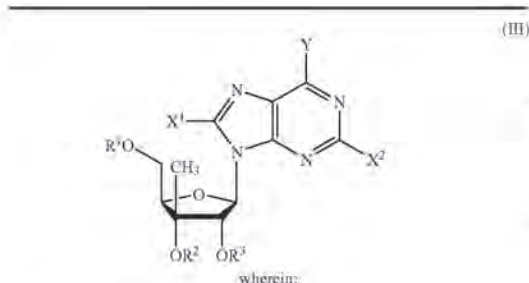
Preparation of 3'-C-methylriboadenine

The title compound can be prepared according to a published procedure (R. F. Nutt, M. J. Dickinson, F. W. Holly, and E. Walton, "Branched-chain sugar nucleosides. III. 3'-C-methyladenine", *J. Org. Chem.* 1968, 33, 1789-1795) (Scheme 9).



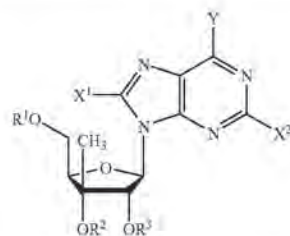
(a) RuO₂/NaIO₄; (b) MeMgI/TiCl₄; (c) HCl/MeOH/H₂O; (d) BzCl/pyridine; (e) AcBr, HBr/AcOH; (f) chloromercuri-6-benzamidopurine; (g) NH₃/MeOH.

In a similar manner, but using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases, the following nucleosides of Formula III are prepared.



R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	H	H	H
H	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	H	OH
H	H	H	H	H	OMe
H	H	H	H	H	OEt
H	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	H	SH
H	H	H	H	H	SMe
H	H	H	H	H	SEt

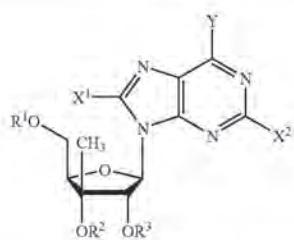
-continued



	R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
	H	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
	H	H	H	H	H	F
	H	H	H	H	H	Cl
	H	H	H	H	H	Br
	H	H	H	H	H	I
	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
60	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
65	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
	monophosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl

121

-continued

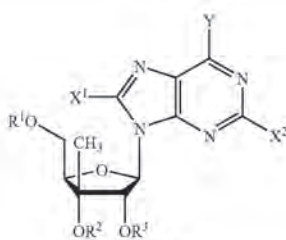


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	F
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
monophosphate	H	H	H	H	I
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	F
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
diphosphate	H	H	H	H	I
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	F
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	Br
triphosphate	H	H	H	H	I
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	H	OH
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	H	F
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl

122

-continued

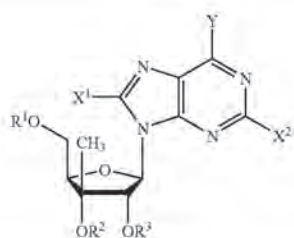


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	H	OH
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	H	F
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	H	OH
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	H	F
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	H	Cl
30	H	H	F	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	H	OH
H	H	H	F	H	F
H	H	H	F	H	Cl
35	H	H	Cl	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	H	OH
H	H	H	Cl	H	F
H	H	H	Cl	H	Cl
H	H	H	Br	H	NH ₂
40	H	H	Br	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	H	OH
H	H	H	Br	H	F
H	H	H	Br	H	Cl
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	NH-cyclopropyl
45	H	H	NH ₂	H	OH
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	F
H	H	H	NH ₂	H	Cl
H	H	H	SH	H	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	H	OH
50	H	H	SH	H	F
H	H	H	SH	H	Cl
acetyl	H	H	H	H	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	H	F
55	acetyl	H	H	H	Cl
acetyl	H	H	F	H	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	H	F
acetyl	H	H	F	H	Cl
60	H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
65	acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH

123

-continued

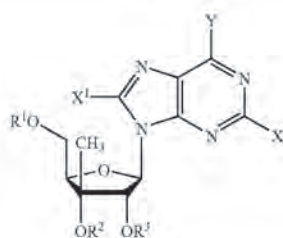


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH ₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	F
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	H	Cl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	H
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
H	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe

124

-continued

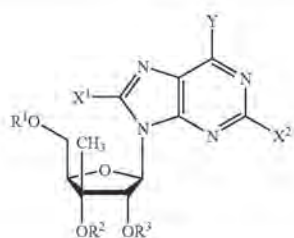


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	Br
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH ₂	I
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	F

125

-continued

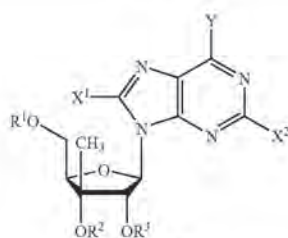


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	F	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	Br	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	OH
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	F
H	H	H	SH	NH ₂	Cl
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	F
acetyl	H	H	H	NH ₂	Cl
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH ₂
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	F
acetyl	H	H	F	NH ₂	Cl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH ₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	F
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH ₂	Cl
H	H	H	H	Cl	H
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl

126

-continued

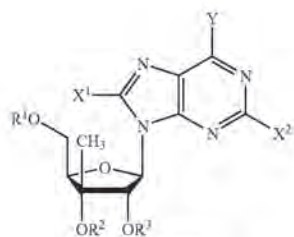


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	X ¹	X ²	Y
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
H	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
H	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	SH
H	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
H	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
H	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH ₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	Cl	S-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	Cl	NH ₂
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl

127

-continued

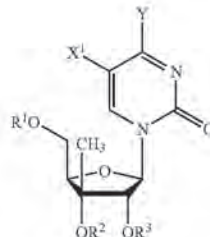


wherein:

R¹	R²	R³	X¹	X²	Y
diphosphate	di-phosphate	di-phosphate	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	Cl	NH₂
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	tri-phosphate	tri-phosphate	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	F	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	F	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Br	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	Br	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	Cl	OH
H	H	H	NH₂	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	NH₂	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	NH₂	Cl	OH
H	H	H	SH	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	SH	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	Cl	OH
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	NH₂
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	H	Cl	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	NH₂
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	Cl	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH₂
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	H	Br	NH₂
H	H	H	H	Br	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	Br	OH

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula VI are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.

128

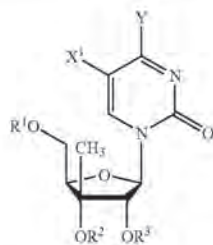


wherein:

R¹	R²	R³	X¹	Y
H	H	H	H	H
H	H	H	H	NH₂
H	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
20	H	H	H	NH-methyl
H	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
H	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
H	H	H	H	OH
H	H	H	H	OMe
25	H	H	H	OEt
H	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	O-acetyl
H	H	H	H	SH
H	H	H	H	SMe
H	H	H	H	SEt
H	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
30	monophosphate	H	H	NH₂
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
35	monophosphate	H	H	OH
monophosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	OMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	OEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	H	H	H	SH
monophosphate	H	H	H	SMe
monophosphate	H	H	H	SEt
monophosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
40	diphosphate	H	H	NH₂
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
45	diphosphate	H	H	NH-methyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	OH
diphosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	OEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	H	H	H	SH
diphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
diphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
diphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
50	triphosphate	H	H	NH₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl
65	triphosphate	H	H	NH₂
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-methyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	NH-ethyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	OH
triphosphate	H	H	H	OMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	OEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	O-acetyl
triphosphate	H	H	H	SH
triphosphate	H	H	H	SMe
triphosphate	H	H	H	SEt
triphosphate	H	H	H	S-cyclopropyl

129

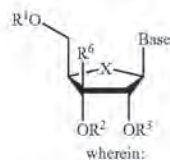
-continued



R¹	R²	R³	X¹	Y
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH₂
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
monophosphate	monophosphate	monophosphate	H	OH
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH₂
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	diphosphate	diphosphate	H	OH
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH₂
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	triphosphate	triphosphate	H	OH
H	H	H	F	NH₂
H	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	F	OH
H	H	H	Cl	NH₂
H	H	H	Cl	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Cl	OH
H	H	H	Br	NH₂
H	H	H	Br	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	Br	OH
H	H	H	NH₂	NH₂
H	H	H	NH₂	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	SH	OH
H	H	H	SH	NH₂
H	H	H	SH	NH-cyclopropyl
H	H	H	H	OH
acetyl	H	H	F	NH₂
acetyl	H	H	F	NH-cyclopropyl
acetyl	H	H	F	OH
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH₂
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
H	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH₂
monophosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH₂
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
diphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH₂
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	NH-cyclopropyl
triphosphate	acetyl	acetyl	H	OH

130

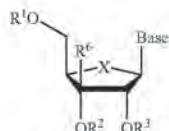
Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XIII are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



15	R¹	R²	R³	R⁶	X	Base
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	Hypoxanthine
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
20	H	H	H	CH₃	O	Thymine
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	Cytosine
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
25	H	H	H	CH₃	O	Uracil
	H	H	H	CH₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	Hypoxanthine
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
30	H	H	H	CH₃	S	Thymine
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	Cytosine
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
35	H	H	H	CH₃	S	Uracil
	H	H	H	CH₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Hypoxanthine
40	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Thymine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Cytosine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
45	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Uracil
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	Hypoxanthine
50	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	Thymine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	Cytosine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
55	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	Uracil
	monophosphate	H	H	CH₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
60	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Hypoxanthine
	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Thymine
	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	Cytosine
	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
65	diphosphate	H	H	CH₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

131

-continued

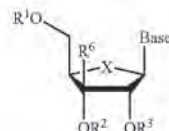


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	H	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

132

-continued

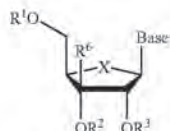


wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ³	R ⁶	X	Base
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
H	H	H	CF ₃	S	6-O-acetyl guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroguanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	guanine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	8-fluoroadenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
H	H	H	CH ₃	S	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	adenine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	6-O-acetyl guanine
monophosphate	H	H	CH ₃	O	8-fluoroguanine

133

-continued

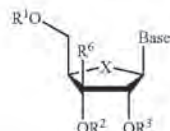


wherein:

R^1	R^2	R^3	R^6	X	Base
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	8-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	6-O-acetyl-guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	8-fluoroguanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	guanine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	2-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	8-fluoroadenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	adenine
diphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	6-O-acetyl-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	2-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	8-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	6-O-acetyl-guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	8-fluoroguanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	guanine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	2-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	8-fluoroadenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
triphosphate	H	H	CH_3	S	adenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	6-O-acetyl-guanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	guanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	adenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	O	2-(N,N-diacetyl)-guanine

134

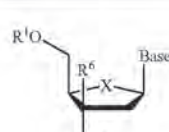
-continued



wherein:

R^1	R^2	R^3	R^6	X	Base
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	6-O-acetyl-guanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	8-fluoroguanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	guanine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	6-(N,N-diacetyl)-adenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	2-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	8-fluoroadenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	2,8-difluoro-adenine
monophosphate	mono-phosphate	mono-phosphate	CF_3	S	adenine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF_3	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	CF_3	S	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	guanine
acetyl	acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	guanine

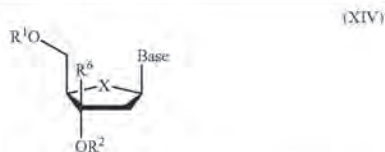
Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XIV are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



wherein:

R^1	R^2	R^6	X	Base
H	H	CH_3	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	CH_3	O	Hypoxanthine
H	H	CH_3	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	CH_3	O	Thymine
H	H	CH_3	O	Cytosine
H	H	CH_3	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH_3	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH_3	O	Uracil
H	H	CH_3	S	5-Fluorouracil
H	H	CH_3	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	H	CH_3	S	Hypoxanthine
H	H	CH_3	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	H	CH_3	S	Thymine
H	H	CH_3	S	Cytosine
H	H	CH_3	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH_3	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	H	CH_3	S	Uracil
H	H	CH_3	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	CH_3	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	CH_3	O	Hypoxanthine

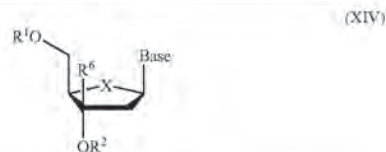
-continued



wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil

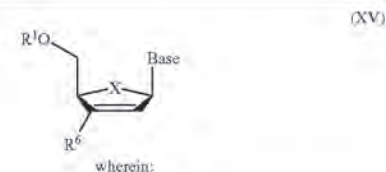
-continued



wherein:

R ¹	R ²	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

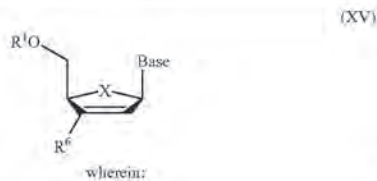
Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XV are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



wherein:

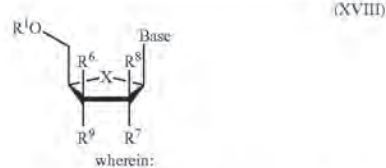
R ¹	R ²	X	Base
H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
H	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	CH ₃	O	Thymine
H	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	O	Uracil
H	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
H	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
H	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
H	CH ₃	S	Thymine
H	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
H	CH ₃	S	Uracil
H	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	Uracil

-continued



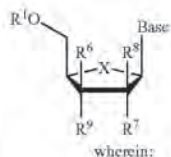
R ¹	R ⁶	X	Base
monophosphate	CH ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
diphosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Thymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	Uracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Thymine
triphosphate	CH ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Thymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	Uracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	O	5-Fluorouracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Hypoxanthine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Thymine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	Uracil
monophosphate	CF ₃	S	5-Fluorouracil
acetyl	CF ₃	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	CF ₃	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine
acetyl	2-bromo-vinyl	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine

Alternatively, the following nucleosides of Formula XVIII are prepared, using the appropriate sugar and pyrimidine or purine bases.



R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	X	Base	R ⁸	R ⁹
H	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	Thymine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	Cytosine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	Uracil	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	O	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	Thymine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	Cytosine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	Uracil	H	Me
H	CH ₃	OH	S	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Thymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Uracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Thymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Uracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Thymine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Cytosine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Uracil	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Thymine	H	Me
diphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Cytosine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Thymine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Cytosine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	Uracil	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	O	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Thymine	H	Me
triphosphate	CH ₃	OH	S	Cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me

-continued



R ¹	R ⁶	R ⁷	X	Base	R ⁸	R ⁹
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	Thymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	Cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	Uracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	O	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetyluracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	Hypoxanthine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	2,4-O-Diacetylthymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	Thymine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	Cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	4-(N-mono-acetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	Uracil	H	Me
monophosphate	CF ₃	OH	S	5-Fluorouracil	H	Me
acetyl	CH ₃	OH	O	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br
acetyl	CH ₃	OH	S	4-(N,N-diacetyl)cytosine	H	Br

VII. Anti-Hepatitis C Activity

Compounds can exhibit anti-hepatitis C activity by inhibiting HCV polymerase, by inhibiting other enzymes needed in the replication cycle, or by other pathways. A number of assays have been published to assess these activities. A general method that assesses the gross increase of HCV virus in culture is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,738,985 to Miles et al. In vitro assays have been reported in Ferrari et al., *Jnl. of Vir.*, 73:1649-1654, 1999; Ishii et al., *Hepatology*, 29:1227-1235, 1999; Lohmann et al., *Jnl. of Bio. Chem.*, 274:10807-10815, 1999; and Yamashita et al., *Jnl. of Bio. Chem.*, 273:15479-15486, 1998.

WO 97/12033, filed on Sep. 27, 1996, by Emory University, listing C. Hagedorn and A. Reinoldus as inventors, and which claims priority to U.S. S. No. 60/004,383, filed on September 1995, describes an HCV polymerase assay that can be used to evaluate the activity of the compounds described herein. Another HCV polymerase assay has been reported by Bartholomew, et al., Hepatitis C virus (HCV) RNA polymerase assay using cloned HCV non-structural proteins; *Antiviral Therapy* 1996:1(Supp 4) 18-24.

Screens that measure reductions in kinase activity from HCV drugs are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 6,030,785, to Katze et al., U.S. Pat. No. 6,010,848 to Delvecchio et al., and U.S. Pat. No. 5,759,795 to Jubin et al. Screens that measure the protease inhibiting activity of proposed HCV drugs are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,861,267 to Su et al., U.S. Pat. No. 5,739,002 to De Francesco et al., and U.S. Pat. No. 5,597,691 to Houghton et al.

Example 4

Phosphorylation Assay of Nucleoside to Active Triphosphate

To determine the cellular metabolism of the compounds, HepG2 cells were obtained from the American Type Culture

Collection (Rockville, Md.), and were grown in 225 cm² tissue culture flasks in minimal essential medium supplemented with non-essential amino acids, 1% penicillin-streptomycin. The medium was renewed every three days, and the cells were subcultured once a week. After detachment of the adherent monolayer with a 10 minute exposure to 30 mL of trypsin-EDTA and three consecutive washes with medium, confluent HepG2 cells were seeded at a density of 2.5x10⁶ cells per well in a 6-well plate and exposed to 10 μM of [³H] labeled active compound (500 dpm/pmol) for the specified time periods. The cells were maintained at 37° C. under a 5% CO₂ atmosphere. At the selected time points, the cells were washed three times with ice-cold phosphate-buffered saline (PBS). Intracellular active compound and its respective metabolites were extracted by incubating the cell pellet overnight at -20° C. with 60% methanol followed by extraction with an additional 20 μL of cold methanol for one hour in an ice bath. The extracts were then combined, dried under gentle filtered air flow and stored at -20° C. until BPLC analysis. The preliminary results of the BPLC analysis are tabulated in Table 1.

TABLE 1

Time (h)	[pmol/million cells]			
	β-D-2'-CH ₃ -riboA-TP	β-D-2'-CH ₃ -riboU-TP	β-D-2'-CH ₃ -riboC-TP	β-D-2'-CH ₃ -riboG-TP
2	33.1	0.40	2.24	ND
4	67.7	1.21	3.99	ND
8	147	1.57	9.76	2.85
24	427	6.39	34.9	0.91
30	456	7.18	36.2	3.22
48	288	9.42	56.4	6.26

Example 5

Bioavailability Assay in Cynomolgus Monkeys

Within 1 week prior to the study initiation, the cynomolgus monkey was surgically implanted with a chronic venous catheter and subcutaneous venous access port (VAP) to facilitate blood collection and underwent a physical examination including hematology and serum chemistry evaluations and the body weight was recorded. Each monkey (six total), received approximately 250 uCi of ³H activity with each dose of active compound, namely β-D-2'-CH₃-riboG at a dose level of 10 mg/kg at a dose concentration of 5 mg/mL, either via an intravenous bolus (3 monkeys, IV), or via oral gavage (3 monkeys, PO). Each dosing syringe was weighed before dosing to gravimetrically determine the quantity of formulation administered. Urine samples were collected via pan catch at the designated intervals (approximately 18-0 hours pre-dose, 0-4, 4-8 and 8-12 hours post-dosage) and processed. Blood samples were collected as well (pre-dose, 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 3, 6, 8, 12 and 24 hours post-dosage) via the chronic venous catheter and VAP or from a peripheral vessel if the chronic venous catheter procedure should not be possible. The blood and urine samples were analyzed for the maximum concentration (C_{max}), time when the maximum concentration was achieved (T_{max}), area under the curve (AUC), half life of the dosage concentration (T_{1/2}), clearance (CL), steady state volume and distribution (V_{ss}) and bioavailability (F), which are tabulated in Tables 2 and 3, and graphically illustrated in FIGS. 2 and 3, respectively.

TABLE 2

Oral Bioavailability in Monkeys					
	Dose (mg)	AUC (ng/mL $\times$ h)	Norm AUC (ng/mL $\times$ h/mg)	Mean Norm AUC (ng/mL $\times$ h/mg)	F (%)
IV Monkey 1	46.44	13614	293.2		
IV Monkey 2	24.53	6581	268.3		
IV Monkey 3	20.72	6079	293.4	284.9	
PO Monkey 1	29.04	758	26.1		
PO Monkey 2	30.93	898	29.0		
PO Monkey 3	30.04	1842	61.3	38.8	13.6

TABLE 3

Experimental Pharmacokinetics of β -D-2'-CH ₃ -riboG in Cynomolgus Monkeys		
	IV	PO
Dose/Route (mg/kg)	10	10
C _{max} (ng/mL)	6945.6 $\pm$ 1886.0	217.7 $\pm$ 132.1
T _{max} (hr)	0.25 $\pm$ 0.00	2.00 $\pm$ 1.00
AUC (ng/mL $\times$ hr)	8758.0 $\pm$ 4212.9	1166.0 $\pm$ 589.6
T _{1/2} (hr)	7.9 $\pm$ 5.4	10.3 $\pm$ 4.1
CL (L/hr/kg)	1.28 $\pm$ 0.48	
V _d (L/kg)	2.09 $\pm$ 0.54	
F (%)		13.8

Example 6

Bone Marrow Toxicity Assay

Human bone marrow cells were collected from normal healthy volunteers and the mononuclear population was separated by Ficoll-Hypaque gradient centrifugation as described previously by Sommadossi J-P, Carlisle R, "Toxicity of 3'-azido-3'-deoxythymidine and 9-(1,3-dihydroxy-2-propoxymethyl)guanine for normal human hematopoietic progenitor cells in vitro" Antimicrob Agents and Chemotherapy 1987; 31:452-454; and Sommadossi J-P, Schinazi R P, Chu C-K, Xie M-Y, "Comparison of cytotoxicity of the (-)- and (+)-enantiomer of 2',3'-dideoxy-3'-thiacytidine in normal human bone marrow progenitor cells" Biochemical Pharmacology 1992; 44:1921-1925. The culture assays for CFU-GM and BFU-E were performed using a bilayer soft agar or methylcellulose method. Drugs were diluted in tissue culture medium and filtered. After 14 to 18 days at 37° C. in a humidified atmosphere of 5% CO₂ in air, colonies of greater than 50 cells were counted using an inverted microscope. The results in Table 4 are presented as the percent inhibition of colony formation in the presence of drug compared to solvent control cultures.

TABLE 4

Human Bone Marrow Toxicity: CFU-GM and BFU-E Clonogenic Assays		
Treatment	IC ₅₀ in μ M	
	CFU-GM	BFU-E
ribavirin	$\sim$ 5	$\sim$ 1
β -D-2'-CH ₃ -riboA	>100	>100
β -D-2'-CH ₃ -riboU	>100	>100
β -D-2'-CH ₃ -riboC	>10	>10
β -D-2'-CH ₃ -riboG	>10	>100

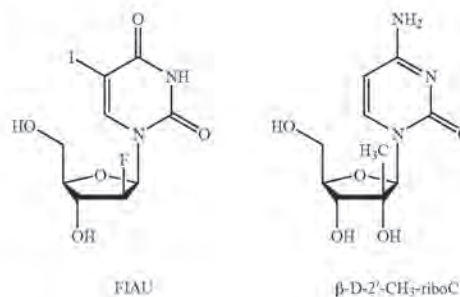
Example 7

Mitochondria Toxicity Assay

HepG2 cells were cultured in 12-well plates as described above and exposed to various concentrations of drugs as taught by Pan-Zhou X-R, Cui L, Zhou X-J, Sommadossi J-P, Darley-Usmer V M, "Differential effects of antiretroviral nucleoside analogs on mitochondrial function in HepG2 cells" Antimicrob Agents Chemother 2000; 44:496-503. Lactic acid levels in the culture medium after 4 day drug exposure was measured using a Boehringer lactic acid assay kit. Lactic acid levels were normalized by cell number as measured by hemocytometer count. The preliminary results from this assay are tabulated in Table 5.

TABLE 5

Mitochondrial Toxicity Study (L-lactic acid assay)			
	Conc. (μ M)	lactate (mg/10 ⁶ cell)	% of Control
Control		2.18	
FIAU	10	3.73	170.4
β -D-2'-CH ₃ -riboC	1	2.52	115.3
	10	2.36	107.9
	50	2.26	103.4
	100	2.21	101.2



This invention has been described with reference to its preferred embodiments. Variations and modifications of the invention, will be obvious to those skilled in the art from the foregoing detailed description of the invention.

We claim:

1. A method for the treatment of a hepatitis C virus infection, comprising administering an effective amount of a purine or pyrimidine β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

143

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the nucleoside or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, is a pyrimidine nucleoside.

3. The method of claim 1, wherein the nucleoside or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, is a purine nucleoside.

4. The method of claim 1, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof is administered in combination or alternation with a second anti-hepatitis C agent.

5. The method of claim 4, wherein the second agent is selected from the group consisting of an interferon, ribavirin, a protease inhibitor, a thiazolidine derivative, a polymerase inhibitor, and a helicase inhibitor.

6. The method of claim 5, wherein the second agent is an interferon.

7. The method of claim 5, wherein the second agent is an ribavirin.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester is in the form of a dosage unit.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein the dosage unit contains 50 to 1000 mg.

10. The method of claim 8, wherein the dosage unit is a tablet or capsule.

11. The method of claim 1, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside or phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, is in substantially pure form.

12. The method of claim 11, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside or phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof is at least 90% by weight of the β -D-isomer.

13. The method of claim 11, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside or phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof is at least 95% by weight of the β -D-isomer.

14. The method of claim 1, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside is administered.

15. The method of claim 1, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside is administered in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

16. The method of claim 1, wherein the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside is administered in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable ester.

17. The method of claim 14, wherein the nucleoside is a pyrimidine nucleoside.

144

18. The method of claim 15, wherein the nucleoside is a pyrimidine nucleoside.

19. The method of claim 16, wherein the nucleoside is a pyrimidine nucleoside.

20. The method of claim 14, wherein the nucleoside is a purine nucleoside.

21. The method of claim 15, wherein the nucleoside is a purine nucleoside.

22. The method of claim 16, wherein the nucleoside is a purine nucleoside.

23. The method of claim 1, wherein a phosphate, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, of the β -D-2'-methyl-ribofuranosyl nucleoside is administered.

24. The method of claim 2, wherein the pyrimidine nucleoside or phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, is a cytidine nucleoside.

25. The method of claim 3, wherein the purine nucleoside or phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, is a guanosine nucleoside.

26. The method of claim 24, wherein a phosphate, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, of the cytidine nucleoside is administered.

27. The method of claim 25, wherein a phosphate, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, of the guanosine nucleoside is administered.

28. The method of claim 1, wherein the nucleoside or phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof, is administered to a host.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein the host is a human.

30. A method for the treatment of a hepatitis C virus infection in a host, comprising contacting a hepatitis C virus in the host with a compound of claim 1 or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

31. A method for the treatment of a hepatitis C virus infection in a host, comprising contacting a cell in the host infected with a hepatitis C virus with a compound of claim 1 or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

32. A method for the treatment of a hepatitis C virus infection in a host, comprising contacting a hepatitis C virus in the host with a compound of claim 24 or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

33. A method for the treatment of a hepatitis C virus infection in a host, comprising contacting a cell in the host infected with a hepatitis C virus with a compound of claim 25 or a phosphate thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof.

* * * * *